Impella Ventricular Support Systems
for Use During Cardiogenic Shock

Impella® 2.5, 5.0, LD and Impella CP®

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE & CLINICAL REFERENCE MANUAL
(United States only)

ABIOMED
Recovering hearts. Saving lives.
IMPORTANT NOTICE: Read this entire manual before using the Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® 2.5, 5.0, LD, or Impella CP® Circulatory Support System (Impella® System). The Impella® System is to be used only in accordance with this manual. This manual is only applicable to Impella® Systems using the Automated Impella® Controller.

Information contained in this document is subject to change without notice.

©2016 Abiomed®, Inc. All rights reserved.
The ABIOMED logo and ABIOMED are registered trademarks of Abiomed, Inc. in the U.S.A. and certain foreign countries. Recovering hearts. Saving lives. is a trademark of Abiomed, Inc.
Impella is a registered trademark of Abiomed Europe GmbH, a wholly owned subsidiary of Abiomed, Inc., in the U.S.A. and certain foreign countries.
RX Only

Abiomed, Inc.
22 Cherry Hill Drive
Danvers, MA 01923
978-646-1400 (voice)
978-774-7240 (fax)
clinical@abiomed.com (email)

Abiomed Europe GmbH
Neuenhofer Weg 3
52074 Aachen, Germany
+49 (241) 8860-0 (voice)
+49 (241) 8860-111 (fax)
europe@abiomed.com (email)

24-Hour Clinical Support Center:
N. America 1-800-422-8666
Europe +49 (0) 1805 2246633

August 2016
Document No. 0042-9023 Rev. C

Recovering hearts. Saving lives.
TABLE OF CONTENTS

1 INDICATIONS, CONTRAINDICATIONS, AND POTENTIAL ADVERSE EVENTS
Indications (United States) ................................................................. 1.1
Contraindications (United States) ...................................................... 1.1
Potential Adverse Events (United States) ......................................... 1.2

2 WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS
Warnings ...................................................................................... 2.1
Cautions ....................................................................................... 2.3

3 THE IMPELLA® CATHETER AND AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER
Overview ..................................................................................... 3.1
Impella® Catheter .......................................................................... 3.5
Automated Impella® Controller ...................................................... 3.11
Purge Cassette .............................................................................. 3.12
Accessories .................................................................................. 3.14

4 USING THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER
Overview ..................................................................................... 4.1
Automated Impella® Controller Features ........................................ 4.2
Home Screen ............................................................................... 4.6
Placement Screen ......................................................................... 4.9
Purge Screen ................................................................................. 4.10
Infusion History Screen ................................................................. 4.11
Mobile Operation ......................................................................... 4.12

5 USING THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER WITH THE IMPELLA® CATHETER
Pre-support Evaluation ................................................................. 5.1
Startup ......................................................................................... 5.2
Case Start .................................................................................... 5.5
Impella® 2.5 Catheter Insertion (Wired) .......................................... 5.11
Wireless Insertion of the Impella® 2.5 Catheter .......................... 5.16
Impella CP® Catheter Insertion .................................................... 5.17
Auxiliary Insertion of the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter 5.21
Alternate Insertion Technique for the Impella® 5.0 Catheter ........ 5.26
Implanting and Starting the Impella® LD Catheter ......................... 5.30
Positioning and Starting the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters 5.33
Positioning and Starting the Impella® 5.0 Catheter ......................... 5.39
Positioning and Starting the Impella® LD Catheter ......................... 5.43
Purge Cassette Procedures ........................................................... 5.46
Troubleshooting the Purge System ............................................... 5.49
Patient Weaning .......................................................................... 5.51
Removing the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter ............... 5.51
Explaining the Impella® LD Catheter ........................................... 5.53

6 CLINICAL EXPERIENCE
Cardiac shock after acute myocardial infarction .......................... 6.1
summary of primary clinical studies ............................................. 6.1
SUMMARY OF SUPPLEMENTAL CLINICAL INFORMATION ........ 6.7
Cardiac shock after open heart surgery ........................................... 6.17
summary of primary clinical studies ............................................. 6.17
SUMMARY OF SUPPLEMENTAL CLINICAL INFORMATION ........ 6.23

7 PATIENT MANAGEMENT TOPICS
Patient Management Overview ..................................................... 7.1
General Patient Care Considerations .......................................... 7.1
Transport Within the Hospital ...................................................... 7.2

8 AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER ALARMS
Alarms Overview ......................................................................... 8.1
Alarm Message Summary ........................................................... 8.3

9 GENERAL SYSTEM INFORMATION
Terminology, Abbreviations, and Symbols ................................ 9.1
Automated Impella® Controller Mechanical Specifications .......... 9.3
Automated Impella® Controller Electrical Specifications ............. 9.3
Equipment Design ........................................................................ 9.4
Equipment Classifications ............................................................. 9.5
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Notice ...................... 9.5
Electromagnetic Compatibility ..................................................... 9.6
Transport Between Hospitals ......................................................... 9.7
VGA Monitor Connection ............................................................. 9.11
Alarm Delay Information .............................................................. 9.12
Patient Environment ..................................................................... 9.12
White Connector Cable ............................................................... 9.13
Impella® Catheter Parameters ..................................................... 9.13
Impella® 2.5 Catheter Dimensions ............................................... 9.14
Impella CP® Catheter Dimensions ............................................... 9.14
Impella® 5.0 Catheter Dimensions ............................................... 9.15
Impella® LD Catheter Dimensions ............................................... 9.15
Cleaning ....................................................................................... 9.16
Storing the Automated Impella® Controller ................................ 9.16
Returning an Impella® Catheter to Abiomed (United States) ...... 9.16

APPENDICES
Appendix A: Impella VENTRICULAR SUPPORT SystemS Limited Service Warranty (United States) ................................................. A.1
Appendix B: Abiomed-Approved Guidewires and Introducers (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) ......................................................... B.1
Appendix C: Automated Impella® Controller Menu Structure ........ C.1
TABLE OF CONTENTS

FIGURES

Figure 3.1  Impella® Catheter in the Heart ................................................. 3.1
Figure 3.2a  Set-up Configuration of the Automated Impella® Controller, Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter, and Accessories (Impella CP® shown) .................................................... 3.3
Figure 3.2b  Standard Configuration of the Automated Impella® Controller, Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter, and Accessories (Impella CP® shown)......................................................... 3.3
Figure 3.3  Set-up Configuration of the Automated Impella® Controller, Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter, and Accessories (Impella® 5.0 shown) ......................................................... 3.4
Figure 3.4  Impella® catheters ................................................................... 3.5
Figure 3.5  Impella® 5.0 and LD Differential Pressure Sensor (Impella® 5.0 shown) 3.9
Figure 3.6  Electrical Signal Generated by the Cardiac Cycle .................... 3.9
Figure 3.7  Correct Impella® 5.0/LD Catheter Positioning and Pulsatile Placement Signal ................................................................. 3.10
Figure 3.8  Incorrect Impella® 5.0/LD Catheter Positioning and Flat Placement Signal ........................................................................ 3.10
Figure 3.9  Automated Impella® Controller – Front View ......................... 3.11
Figure 3.10  Purge Cassette ..................................................................... 3.12
Figure 3.11  White Connector Cable ........................................................... 3.14
Figure 3.12  Impella® 2.5 Introducer Kit .................................................... 3.14
Figure 3.13  Impella CP® Introducer Kit .................................................... 3.14
Figure 3.14  Silicone Plugs (Impella® 5.0/LD) ........................................... 3.14
Figure 3.15  Impella® Auxiliary Insertion Kit (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP®) 3.15
Figure 3.16  Placement Guidewire .............................................................. 3.15
Figure 3.17  Dextrose Solution .................................................................. 3.15
Figure 3.18  Automated Impella® Controller Cart ..................................... 3.15
Figure 4.1  Automated Impella® Controller Features – Front View .......... 4.2
Figure 4.2  Automated Impella® Controller Features – Side Views .......... 4.4
Figure 4.3  Home Screen ....................................................................... 4.6
Figure 4.4  Placement Screen ................................................................... 4.9
Figure 4.5  Purge Screen ........................................................................ 4.10
Figure 4.6  Infusion History Screen ........................................................... 4.12
Figure 5.1  Automated Impella® Controller Power Switch ....................... 5.3
Figure 5.2  Automated Impella® Controller Startup Screen ..................... 5.4
Figure 5.3  Initial Case Start Screen .......................................................... 5.5
Figure 5.4  Inserting Purge Cassette into Automated Impella® Controller 5.6
Figure 5.5  Inserting the Catheter Plug into the Connector Cable ................. 5.7
Figure 5.6  Snapping Purge Clip to Connector Cable (Impella CP® shown) 5.7
Figure 5.7  Connecting the Luer(s) to the Impella® Catheter (Impella CP® shown) 5.8
Figure 5.8  Connecting the Impella Catheter using the luer(s) ................. 5.8
Figure 5.9  Squeezing the White Flush Valve to Prime the Placement Signal Lumen 5.9
Figure 5.10  Entering Purge Fluid Information ......................................... 5.9
Figure 5.11  Changing the Purge Fluid Information ................................ 5.10
Figure 5.12  Connecting the Purge Tubing to the Connector Cable ............ 5.10
Figure 5.13  Set-up Configuration of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems (Impalla CP® shown) .............................................................. 5.11
Figure 5.14  Inserting the Peel-Away Introducer ...................................... 5.12
Figure 5.15  Inserting the Diagnostic Catheter ......................................... 5.12
Figure 5.16  Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire using the EasyGuide Lumen 5.13
Figure 5.17  Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire without the EasyGuide Lumen and Aligning the Placement Guidewire ................................................................. 5.14
Figure 5.18  Inserting the Impella® Catheter ............................................ 5.14
Figure 5.19  Aortic Waveform on Final Case Start Screen ...................... 5.15
Figure 5.21  Inserting the Diagnostic Catheter ......................................... 5.18
Figure 5.22  Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire using the EasyGuide Lumen 5.19
Figure 5.23  Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire without the EasyGuide Lumen and Aligning the Placement Guidewire ................................................................. 5.19
Figure 5.24  Inserting the Impella® Catheter ............................................ 5.20
Figure 5.25  Aortic Waveform on Final Case Start Screen ...................... 5.21
Figure 5.26  Introducer, Graft Lock, and Hemashield Platinum Graft (Graft Not Supplied) .............................................................. 5.23
Figure 5.27  Correct Positioning if Second Graft Lock Required .............. 5.23
Figure 5.28  Closing the Graft Lock ......................................................... 5.24
Figure 5.29  Releasing the Graft Lock ....................................................... 5.25
Figure 5.30  Cut-Down Insertion of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter ................. 5.26
Figure 5.31  Guidewire Placement ............................................................. 5.27
Figure 5.32  Femoral Artery Insertion of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter Using a Sidearm Graft .............................................................. 5.29
Figure 5.33  Impella® LD Catheter with Silicone Plugs ............................ 5.31
Figure 5.34  Waveform as Catheter is Advanced into the Aorta .......... 5.32
Figure 5.35  Pulsatile Waveform on Final Case Start Screen ............... 5.32
Figure 5.36  Starting the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheter ............ 5.33
Figure 5.37  FLOW CONTROL Options for the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheter .............................................................. 5.33
Figure 5.38  Ventricular Waveform on Placement Signal Screen ............ 5.34
Figure 5.39  Transfer to P-level Mode ..................................................... 5.34
Figure 5.40  Adjusting P-level ................................................................. 5.36
Figure 5.41  Removing the Peel-Away Introducer (14 Fr Introducer shown) 5.37
Figure 5.42  Standard Configuration for Impella Ventricular Support Systems after Transfer from the Set-up Configuration ............................ 5.39
Figure 5.43  Waveform as Catheter is Advanced into the Aorta ............. 5.40
Figure 5.44  Pulsatile Waveform on Placement Screen ......................... 5.41
Figure 5.45  Selecting P-level .................................................................. 5.41
Figure 5.46  Confirming Placement on the Placement Signal Screen .... 5.42
Figure 5.47  Selecting P-level ................................................................. 5.44
Figure 5.48  Confirming Placement on the Placement Signal Screen .... 5.44
Figure 5.49  Impella® LD Catheter After Implantation ......................... 5.45
Figure 5.50  Disconnecting the Y Connector from the Purge Cassette Tubing 5.47
Figure 5.51  Removing the Stylet ............................................................. 5.52
Figure 5.52  Inserting the Guidewire with the Cheater ......................... 5.53
Figure 5.53  Loosening the Tushy-Borst Valve ...................................... 5.53
Figure 6.1  Kaplan-Meier survival curves survival (to 30 days) for the ISAR-SHOCK trial .............................................................. 6.4
Figure 6.2  Lactate levels seen post-implant during the trial .................... 6.5
Figure 6.3  Increase in cardiac index from baseline, Impella vs. IABP 30 minutes post-support, in patients treated for cardiogenic shock after an AMI (ISAR-SHOCK) .......... 6.5
Figure 6.4  Change in inotropic dosage at 24 hours, Impella vs. IABP in patients treated for cardiogenic shock after an AMI (ISAR-SHOCK) ........................................ 6.6
Figure 6.5  Time intervals for Impella implants data collection by type of device 6.8
Figure 6.6  Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival – All patient cohort 6.9
Figure 6.7  Kaplan-Meier curve estimates, 30 day survival (by device) - All patient cohort 6.9
Figure 6.8  Outcomes between Impella Registry subgroups: Patients likely to be eligible for RCTs vs. Patients likely to be excluded from RCTs (“salvage” patients) ........................................ 6.10
Figure 6.9  30-day outcomes (by device) between Impella Registry subgroups: Patients likely to be eligible for RCTs vs. Patients likely to be excluded from RCTs (“salvage” patients) 6.11
Figure 6.10  Survival to discharge outcomes (by device) between Impella Registry subgroups: Patients likely to be eligible for RCTs vs. Patients likely to be excluded from RCTs (“salvage” patients) 6.11
Figure 6.11  Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30-day survival ............... 6.12
TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure 6.12</th>
<th>Survival to discharge in AMICS cohort ..................................................</th>
<th>6.12</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.13</td>
<td>Improvement in patient hemodynamics (from baseline to 48hrs post device implant) for RECOVER I patients ..................................................</td>
<td>6.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.14</td>
<td>Decrease in inotropes and pressors (post-device placement) for RECOVER I patients ..................................................</td>
<td>6.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.15</td>
<td>RECOVER I enrollment .............................................................................</td>
<td>6.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.16</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier survival curve for freedom from death (to 1 year) ..................</td>
<td>6.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.17</td>
<td>Time intervals for Impella implants data collection by type of device .......</td>
<td>6.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.18</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival – all patients cohort ........</td>
<td>6.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.19</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival – for difference devices ..................................................................................</td>
<td>6.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.20</td>
<td>Groups used for each classification analysis ...........................................</td>
<td>6.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.21</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (all patients) .................................................................................</td>
<td>6.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.22</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (patients with Impella 5.0/LD) ..........................................................</td>
<td>6.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.23</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (patients with Impella CP) ........................................................................</td>
<td>6.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.24</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (patients with Impella 2.5) .................................................................</td>
<td>6.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.25</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification B (all patients) ..................................................................................</td>
<td>6.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.26</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification B (patients with Impella 5.0/LD) ..........................................................</td>
<td>6.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.27</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification B (patients with Impella CP) ........................................................................</td>
<td>6.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.28</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification B (patients with Impella 2.5) .................................................................</td>
<td>6.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.29</td>
<td>Flow diagram of the distribution of the ABS000 LVAD PCCS patient cohort ..................................................................................</td>
<td>6.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.30</td>
<td>Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival ......................................</td>
<td>6.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.31</td>
<td>Improvement in patient hemodynamics (from baseline to 48 hr post-device implant) for RECOVER I patients ..................................................</td>
<td>6.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 6.32</td>
<td>Decrease in inotropes and pressors (post-device placement) for RECOVER I patients ..................................................</td>
<td>6.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.1</td>
<td>Labeled TEE and TTE images of the Impella® Catheter Position ...................</td>
<td>7.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.2</td>
<td>Transesophageal Echocardiographic (TEE) Illustrations of Impella® Catheter Position ..................................................</td>
<td>7.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.3</td>
<td>Transthoracic Echocardiographic (TTE) Illustrations of Impella® Catheter Position ..................................................</td>
<td>7.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.4</td>
<td>Correct and Incorrect Impella® Catheter Position (Color Doppler TTE) .......</td>
<td>7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.5</td>
<td>Correct Impella CP® Catheter Position (similar for Impella® 2.5) ................</td>
<td>7.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.6</td>
<td>Correct Impella® 5.0 Catheter Position (similar for Impella® LD) .............</td>
<td>7.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.7</td>
<td>Impella CP® Catheter Fully in Ventricle (similar for Impella® 2.5) .............</td>
<td>7.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.8</td>
<td>Impella CP® Catheter Completely in the Aorta or Inlet and Outlet Areas in Ventricle and Open Pressure Area in Aorta (similar for Impella® 2.5) ..................................................................................</td>
<td>7.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.9</td>
<td>Impella CP® Catheter Position Unknown (similar for Impella® 2.5) .............</td>
<td>7.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.10</td>
<td>Impella® 5.0 Catheter Position Wrong (similar for Impella® LD) ...............</td>
<td>7.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.11</td>
<td>Impella® 5.0 Catheter Position Unknown (similar for Impella® LD) .............</td>
<td>7.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.12</td>
<td>Impella® 5.0 Catheter Outlet Area or near Aortic Valve (similar for Impella® LD) ..................................................................................</td>
<td>7.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 7.13</td>
<td>Displacing Air During Flush Solution Change Out Procedure .................</td>
<td>7.22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

AMI: Acute Myocardial Infarction; CABG: Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting; FDA: Food and Drug Administration; MVR: Mitral Valve Repair or Replacement; OHT: Orthotopic Heart Transplant; VAD: Ventricular Assist Device.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table 3.1</td>
<td>Impella® Set-up and Insertion Kit Components</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3.2</td>
<td>Impella® Axillary Insertion Kit</td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3.3</td>
<td>Impella® Catheter Components</td>
<td>3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3.4</td>
<td>Purge Cassette Components</td>
<td>3.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3.5</td>
<td>Impella® Catheter and Automated Impella® Controller Accessories</td>
<td>3.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 4.1</td>
<td>Automated Impella® Controller Front View Features</td>
<td>4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 4.2</td>
<td>Automated Impella® Controller Side View Features</td>
<td>4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 4.3</td>
<td>Automated Impella® Controller Display Elements</td>
<td>4.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5.1</td>
<td>Evaluation Prior to Inserting the Impella® Catheter</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5.2</td>
<td>Additional Considerations Prior to Inserting the Impella® LD Catheter</td>
<td>5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5.3</td>
<td>P-level Flow Rates for the Impella® 2.5 Catheter</td>
<td>5.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5.4</td>
<td>P-level Flow Rates for the Impella CP® Catheter</td>
<td>5.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5.5</td>
<td>P-Level Flow Rates for the Impella® 5.0 Catheter</td>
<td>5.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 5.6</td>
<td>P-Level Flow Rates for the Impella® LD Catheter</td>
<td>5.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6.1</td>
<td>Baseline demographics and characteristics</td>
<td>6.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6.2</td>
<td>Baseline demographics and characteristics (continued)</td>
<td>6.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6.3</td>
<td>Baseline patient characteristics</td>
<td>6.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6.4</td>
<td>Baseline patient hemodynamics</td>
<td>6.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6.5</td>
<td>Baseline patient hemodynamics (continued)</td>
<td>6.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6.6</td>
<td>Site-reported adverse events (to discharge) by classification</td>
<td>6.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 6.7</td>
<td>Site-reported adverse events (to discharge) by classification (continued)</td>
<td>6.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 7.1</td>
<td>Guide for Managing Hemolysis in Various Circumstances</td>
<td>7.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 7.2</td>
<td>Recommended Standards for Maintenance of the Placement Signal for Impella®</td>
<td>7.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 7.3</td>
<td>Troubleshooting When Operating the Impella® Catheter in the Presence of an EAM System</td>
<td>7.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 7.4</td>
<td>Troubleshooting When Operating the Impella® Catheter in the Presence of a MNS System</td>
<td>7.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 8.1</td>
<td>Alarm Levels</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 8.2</td>
<td>Automated Impella® Controller Alarm Messages</td>
<td>8.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9.1</td>
<td>Terminology and Abbreviations</td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9.2</td>
<td>Symbols</td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9.3</td>
<td>Symbols (continued)</td>
<td>9.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9.4</td>
<td>Mechanical specifications for the Automated Impella Controller</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9.5</td>
<td>Electrical specifications for the Automated Impella Controller</td>
<td>9.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9.6</td>
<td>Equipment classifications</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 9.7</td>
<td>Guidance and manufacturer's declaration - emissions, all equipment and systems</td>
<td>9.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table B.1</td>
<td>Alternative Guidewires for Impella® 2.5 System</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table B.2</td>
<td>Alternative Introducer Sheaths for Impella® 2.5 and Impella® CP® System</td>
<td>8.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INTRODUCTION

PURPOSE OF MANUAL

This Instructions for Use & Clinical Reference Manual is designed for healthcare professionals. It contains clinical and technical information to guide healthcare professionals in their use of the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, LD, and Impella CP® Catheters during cardiogenic shock. The Impella Ventricular Support Systems perform life-sustaining functions. To use the system you must understand and follow these instructions. The Impella Ventricular Support Systems may be used only for its intended purpose.

MANUAL OVERVIEW

This manual provides instructions for use of the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, LD, and Impella CP® Catheters with the Automated Impella® Controller. The following summarizes the contents of each section of the manual.

• Section 1: Indications, Contraindications, and Potential Adverse Events discusses indications for use of the Impella® Catheter with the Automated Impella® Controller, contraindications, and potential adverse events that may be associated with the use of the system.

• Section 2: Warnings and Cautions discusses the warnings and cautions pertaining to the use of the Impella® Catheter with the Automated Impella® Controller.

• Section 3: The Impella® Catheter and Automated Impella® Controller provides an overview of the system and describes its major components and features.

• Section 4: Using the Automated Impella® Controller describes the controls and various screen types on the Automated Impella® Controller.

• Section 5: Using the Automated Impella® Controller with the Impella® Catheter provides the procedures for using the Impella Ventricular Support Systems.

• Section 6: Clinical Experience provides an overview of clinical studies of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems.

• Section 7: Patient Management Topics provides key information on various topics related to management of patients with the Impella® Catheter and Automated Impella® Controller.

• Section 8: Automated Impella® Controller Alarms provides a listing of Automated Impella® Controller alarms as well as information on what to do to resolve them.

• Section 9: General System Information contains information including definitions for key terms that appear in the manual, descriptions of the abbreviations and symbols that appear on Impella® Catheter and Automated Impella® Controller components and packaging, technical information pertaining to the Impella® Catheter and Automated Impella® Controller, and instructions on cleaning and storing system components as well as returning components to Abiomed.

• Appendices at the end of the manual provide supplemental information about topics including the Impella® Limited Service Warranty; Abiomed-approved guidewires and introducers; and the Automated Impella® Controller menu structure.
1 INDICATIONS, CONTRAINDICATIONS, AND POTENTIAL ADVERSE EVENTS

INDICATIONS (UNITED STATES) ................................................................. 1.1
Impella® 2.5, Impella CP®, Impella® 5.0, and Impella® LD .......................... 1.1
CONTRAINDICATIONS (UNITED STATES) .............................................. 1.1
POTENTIAL ADVERSE EVENTS (UNITED STATES) ............................... 1.2
INDICATIONS (UNITED STATES)

IMPELLA® 2.5, IMPELLA CP®, IMPELLA® 5.0, AND IMPELLA® LD

The Impella® 2.5, Impella CP®, Impella® 5.0, and Impella® LD Catheters, in conjunction with the Automated Impella® Controller, are temporary ventricular support devices intended for short term use (< 4 days for the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®, and < 6 days for the Impella® 5.0 and Impella® LD) and indicated for the treatment of ongoing cardiogenic shock that occurs immediately (< 48 hours) following acute myocardial infarction or open heart surgery as a result of isolated left ventricular failure that is not responsive to optimal medical management and conventional treatment measures.* The intent of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems therapy is to reduce ventricular work and to provide the circulatory support necessary to allow heart recovery and early assessment of residual myocardial function.

*Optimal medical management and conventional treatment measures include volume loading and use of pressors and inotropes, with or without IABP

CONTRAINDICATIONS (UNITED STATES)

Patients with aortic stenosis or other abnormal aortic valve performance may be compromised by the use of the Impella® Catheter. Patients with aortic valve disease should be observed for aortic insufficiency.

The Impella® System is contraindicated in patients with:

- Mural thrombus in the left ventricle
- Mechanical aortic valve or heart constrictive device
- Aortic valve stenosis/calcification (equivalent to an orifice of 0.6 cm² or less)
- Moderate to severe aortic insufficiency (echocardiographic assessment of aortic insufficiency graded as ≥ +2)
- Severe peripheral arterial disease that precludes the placement of the Impella® System
- Significant right heart failure
- Combined cardiorespiratory failure
- Presence of an atrial or ventricular sepal defect (including post-infarct VSD)
- Left ventricular rupture
- Cardiac tamponade
• Acute renal dysfunction
• Aortic insufficiency
• Aortic valve injury
• Atrial fibrillation
• Bleeding
• Cardiogenic shock
• Cardiac tamponade
• Cardiopulmonary resuscitation
• Cerebral vascular accident / Stroke
• Death
• Device malfunction
• Failure to achieve angiographic success
• Hemolysis
• Hepatic failure
• Insertion site infection
• Limb ischemia
• Myocardial infarction
• Need for cardiac, thoracic or abdominal operation
• Perforation
• Renal failure
• Repeat revascularization
• Respiratory dysfunction
• Sepsis
• Severe hypotension
• Thrombocytopenia
• Thrombotic vascular (non-CNS) complication
• Transient ischemic attack
• Vascular injury
• Ventricular arrhythmia, fibrillation or tachycardia
2 WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

WARNINGS ............................................................................................................ 2.1
CAUTIONS ............................................................................................................. 2.3
WARNINGS

Use of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems by trained and experienced practitioners has been associated with improved outcomes. Consequently, the first use of Impella® should be preceded by the completion of a contemporary Abiomed Impella® training program and include on-site proctoring during the first use by Abiomed clinical support personnel certified in the use of Impella®.

Institution of circulatory support using Impella® has not been studied in the following conditions:

- Presence of irreversible end-organ failure
- Presence of severe anoxic brain injury

Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® Catheter and, for the Impella CP®, during rewire through the guidewire access port. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.

Be sure that the stopcock on the peel-away introducer or repositioning sheath is always kept in the closed position. Significant bleed back can result if the stopcock is open.

Avoid manual compression of the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula assembly.

The sterile components of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems can be used only if the sterilization indicators show that the contents have been sterilized, the packaging is not damaged, and the expiration date has not elapsed.

Do NOT resterilize or reuse the Impella® Catheter. It is a disposable device and is intended for single use only. Reuse, reprocessing, or resterilization may compromise the structural integrity of the catheter and/or lead to catheter failure which, in turn, may result in patient injury, illness, or death.

Retrograde flow will occur across the aortic valve if the flow rate of the Impella® Catheter is less than 0.5 L/min.

To prevent malfunction of the locking mechanism of the peel-away introducer, do NOT hold the hemostatic valve while inserting into the artery.

To prevent failure of the peel-away introducer, remove the peel-away introducer prior to transport when activated clotting time (ACT) is less than 150 seconds.

Do NOT use saline in the purge system.

Do NOT use an Impella Ventricular Support Systems if any part of the system is damaged.

To prevent the risk of explosion, do NOT operate the Impella Ventricular Support Systems near flammable anesthetics.

If at any time during the course of support with the Impella® Catheter, the Automated Impella® Controller alarms “Purge Pressure Low” or “Purge System Open,” follow the instructions presented in section 5 of this manual.

MR Unsafe - Do NOT subject a patient who has been implanted with an Impella System to magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). The strong magnetic energy produced by an MRI machine may cause the Impella System components to stop working, and result in injuries to the patient. An MRI may also damage the Impella System electronics.

WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

Warnings alert you to situations that can cause death or serious injury. The red symbol 🔄 appears before warning messages.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Warning</th>
<th>Cardiopulmonary support (CPR) should be initiated immediately per hospital protocol if indicated for any patient supported by the Impella® Catheter. When initiating CPR, reduce the Impella® Catheter flow rate. When cardiac function has been restored, return flow rate to the previous level and assess placement signals on the controller.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>During defibrillation, do <strong>NOT</strong> touch the Impella® Catheter, cables, or Automated Impella® Controller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Power the Automated Impella® Controller using its internal battery if the integrity of the protective earth conductor is questionable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Lithium-ion battery replacement by inadequately trained personnel could result in excessive temperatures, fire, or explosion. Only technicians authorized by Abiomed should remove or change the battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>To avoid risk of electric shock, this equipment must only be connected to a supply mains with protective earth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>No modification of this equipment is allowed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Medical electrical equipment needs special precautions regarding EMC and needs to be installed and put into service according to the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) information provided in section 9 of this manual.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>During transport, the Automated Impella® Controller may be exposed to stronger electromagnetic disturbance than during in-hospital use. Strong electromagnetic disturbance may cause the Automated Impella® Controller to display soft button menu selections that were not selected by the user. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the operating parameters are not affected. No user intervention is required. Monitor Impella® Catheter flow and patient hemodynamics to confirm normal operation. The condition will resolve itself once the Automated Impella® Controller is no longer exposed to the disturbance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Portable and mobile RF communications equipment can affect medical electrical equipment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>The equipment or system should not be used adjacent to or stacked with other equipment. If adjacent or stacked use is necessary, the equipment or system should be observed to verify normal operation in the configuration in which it will be used.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Use of cables, other than those sold by Abiomed, may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the Automated Impella® Controller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>The Automated Impella® Controller uses RFID (radio frequency identification) to identify and communicate with the purge cassette. Other equipment may interfere with the Automated Impella® Controller even if that other equipment complies with CISPR emission requirements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Infusion through the sideport of the introducer can be done only after all air is removed from the introducer. If performed, the infusion should be done for flushing purposes only and <strong>NOT</strong> for delivering therapy or monitoring blood pressure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Do <strong>NOT</strong> use the guidewire access port on the Impella CP® as an arterial line. The stylet should remain in place until guidewire access is required through the Impella® Catheter.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**CAUTIONS**

- Handle with care. The Impella® Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do **NOT** bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.

- Physicians should exercise special care when inserting the Impella® Catheter during active Cardiopulmonary Resuscitation (CPR). In addition, active CPR maneuvers may change the position of the Impella device. Check that the pump is positioned correctly in the left ventricle after CPR with echocardiography guidance.

- Patients with aortic stenosis or other abnormal aortic valve performance may be compromised by the use of the Impella® Catheter. Patients with aortic valve disease should be observed for aortic insufficiency.

- Partial circulatory support with Impella® has been associated with more extensive use of rotational atherectomy. Extensive use of rotational atherectomy has been associated with a periprocedural increase in cardiac biomarkers indicative of myocardial injury. Rotational atherectomy, with or without the use of hemodynamic support, should be used in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions for use.

- Physicians should exercise special care when inserting the Impella® Catheter in patients with known or suspected unrepaired abdominal aortic aneurysm or significant descending thoracic aortic aneurysm or dissection of the ascending, transverse, or descending aorta.

- Use only original accessories and replacement parts supplied by Abiomed.

- Do **NOT** use damaged or contaminated connector cables.

- To prevent device failure, do **NOT** start the Impella® Catheter until the guidewire has been removed.

- Do **NOT** remove the Impella® Catheter over the length of the guidewire.

- When replacing the purge cassette, the replacement process must be completed within 2 minutes. The Impella® Catheter may be damaged if replacement takes longer than 2 minutes.

- To prevent malfunction of the Automated Impella® Controller, avoid long-term exposure to direct sunlight and excessive heat (40°C).

- To prevent overheating and improper operation, do **NOT** block the cooling vents of the Automated Impella® Controller while it is operating.

- Do **NOT** kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do **NOT** kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.

- During case start, make sure the yellow luer connection between the purge tubing and Y connector is tightened and not leaking.

- The Li-Ion batteries must be charged for 5 hours prior to system operation in order to meet the runtime requirement of 1 hour. Failure to do so will yield a shorter runtime. After being unplugged, the Automated Impella® Controller will operate for at least 60 minutes after the batteries have been fully charged.

---

**Cautions**

Cautions indicate situations in which equipment may malfunction, be damaged, or cease to operate. The yellow symbol ⚠️ appears before caution messages.
Minimize exposure of Impella Ventricular Support Systems components to sources of electromagnetic interference (EMI). Exposure to sources of EMI, such as cell phones and two-way radios, may cause operational interference. To clear interference, either increase the distance between system components and the EMI source or turn off the EMI source.

During use with the Remote Link, a Medical Device Data System (MDDS), if the Automated Impella® Controller is exposed to strong electromagnetic disturbances, the Remote Link may either restart or shut down. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the Automated Impella® Controller operating parameters are not affected. If the Remote Link stops working because of electromagnetic disturbances, a hard restart (by first disconnecting, and then reconnecting its AC power) will correct the problem.

Operation of Impella Ventricular Support Systems components may interfere with the operation of other devices. If interference occurs, increase the distance between the device and system components.

Have a backup Automated Impella® Controller, purge cassette, connector cable, and Impella® Catheter available in the unlikely event of a device failure.

Do **NOT** use the bed mount as a handle.

Do **NOT** alter the Impella® Introducer kit in any way.

Aspiration and saline flushing of the Impella® Introducer kit sheath, dilator, and valve should be performed to help minimize the potential for air embolism and clot formation.

Indwelling introducer sheaths should be internally supported by a catheter or dilator.

Dilators and catheters should be removed slowly from the sheath. Rapid removal may damage the valve, resulting in blood flow through the valve.

Never advance the guidewire or sheath when resistance is met. Determine the cause of resistance using fluoroscopy and take remedial action.

When injecting or aspirating through the sheath, use the sideport only.

Operation of the system without heparin in the purge solution has not been tested. In the event that a patient is intolerant to heparin, due to heparin-induced thrombocytopenia or bleeding, physicians should use their clinical judgment to assess the risks versus benefits of operating the Impella Ventricular Support Systems without heparin. If it is in the best interest of the patient to operate the system without heparin, the dextrose solution is still required, and physicians should consider systemic delivery of an alternative anticoagulant. Do **NOT** add any alternative anticoagulant (such as a direct thrombin inhibitor) to the purge fluid. The Impella® Catheter has not been tested with any alternative anticoagulants in the purge solution.
3 THE IMPELLA® CATHETER AND AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER

OVERVIEW ........................................................................................................... 3.1
  Reusable System Components ........................................................................ 3.1
  Single-use System Components ....................................................................... 3.2
  Impella® Set-up and Insertion kits (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) ................ 3.2
  Impella® Axillary Insertion kit (Impella® 2.5, 5.0 and Impella CP®) ............... 3.2
  System Configurations .................................................................................... 3.3

IMPELLA® CATHETER ............................................................................................ 3.5
  Differential Pressure Sensor for Impella® 5.0 and LD ...................................... 3.8

AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER ................................................................. 3.11

PURGE CASSETTE ............................................................................................... 3.12

ACCESSORIES ..................................................................................................... 3.14
OVERVIEW

The Impella® Catheter is an intravascular microaxial blood pump that supports a patient’s circulatory system during cardiogenic shock, low output syndrome, or other conditions. The Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella® CP Catheters can be inserted percutaneously through the femoral or axillary artery and into the left ventricle. The Impella® LD is inserted directly through the ascending aorta and into the left ventricle.

![Figure 3.1 Impella® Catheter in the Heart](image)

When properly positioned, the Impella® Catheter delivers blood from the inlet area, which sits inside the left ventricle, through the cannula, to the outlet opening in the ascending aorta. Physicians and device operators monitor the correct positioning and functioning of the Impella® Catheter on the display screen of the Automated Impella® Controller.

This section describes the components of the Impella® Catheter and the Automated Impella® Controller, as well as the accessory components.

REUSABLE SYSTEM COMPONENTS

The Impella Ventricular Support Systems consist of the following reusable components:

- Automated Impella® Controller—provides the user interface, alarm indications, and portable battery
- Automated Impella® Controller cart—for easy transport of the Automated Impella® Controller
SINGLE-USE SYSTEM COMPONENTS

The Impella Ventricular Support Systems also include the following single-use components:

- Impella® Catheter
- Purge cassette
- Introducer kit (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP®)
- Impella® Axillary Insertion kit (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP®)
- Connector cable
- Incision template (Impella® LD)

IMPELLA® SET-UP AND INSERTION KITS (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPella CP®)

The components of the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Systems are each packaged into a single box called the Impella® Set-up and Insertion kit. Table 3.1 describes the contents of these kits.

Table 3.1   Impella® Set-up and Insertion Kit Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Impella® Set-up and Insertion kit contains the following:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Impella® Catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Connector cable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Purge cassette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Introducer kit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>» Peel-away introducer (13 Fr for Impella® 2.5, 14 Fr for Impella CP®)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>» Dilator(s) (13 Fr for Impella® 2.5, 8 Fr, 10 Fr, 12 Fr, and 14 Fr for Impella CP®)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>» 18 G Seldinger needle (Impella® 2.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>» 12 cc syringe (Impella® 2.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>» 0.035 inch stiff access guidewire</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPELLA® AXILLARY INSERTION KIT (IMPELLA® 2.5, 5.0 AND IMPella CP®)

Table 3.2 describes the contents of the Impella® Axillary Insertion kit.

Table 3.2   Impella® Axillary Insertion Kit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The Impella® Axillary Insertion kit contains the following:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• 23 Fr diameter x 6 cm length peel-away introducer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 2 graft locks used to attach a graft onto the introducer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(Note: Only one graft lock is required when used with the recommended Hemashield Platinum graft; a back-up is provided.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 8 Fr silicone-coated lubrication dilator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• 2 silicone plugs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is recommended that the Impella® Axillary Insertion kit be used in conjunction with a 10 mm diameter x 20 cm length Hemashield Platinum graft.
**SYSTEM CONFIGURATIONS**

*Initial set-up configuration for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®*

Figure 3.2a illustrates how the Automated Impella® Controller connects to the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter and accessory components in the initial set-up configuration.

![Figure 3.2a](image)

*Standard configuration for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®*

Figure 3.2b illustrates the standard configuration of the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter, Automated Impella® Controller, and accessory components.

![Figure 3.2b](image)
System configuration for Impella® 5.0 and LD

Figure 3.3 illustrates how the Automated Impella® Controller connects to the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter and accessory components in the initial set-up configuration.

![Set-up Configuration of the Automated Impella® Controller, Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter, and Accessories (Impella® 5.0 shown)]
The Impella® Catheter is an intravascular microaxial blood pump that delivers up to 2.5 liters (Impella® 2.5), 3.3 liters (Impella CP®) or 5.0 liters (Impella® 5.0 and LD) of blood per minute from the left ventricle into the aorta. Figure 3.4 illustrates the Impella® Catheters. Table 3.3 describes each component from the pigtail at one end to the check valve on the other end.

**Impella® 2.5**

**Figure 3.4 Impella® Catheters**

**Impella® 2.5 Repositioning Sheath: Outer Diameter**

The repositioning sheath for the Impella® 2.5 has a graduated outer diameter of 9 Fr to 15 Fr.
Figure 3.4 Impella® Catheters (continued)
### Table 3.3 Impella® Catheter Components

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pigtail</td>
<td>The 6 Fr pigtail is attached to the cannula at the distal end of the inlet area. It assists with stabilizing the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP® Catheters in the correct position in the left ventricle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inlet area</td>
<td>The inlet area, located at the distal tip of the cannula, has four openings (windows) (five for the Impella® 5.0 and LD) that allow blood to be drawn into the inlet and channeled through the cannula.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiopaque marker</td>
<td>The radiopaque marker on the catheter shaft of the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters is visible with fluoroscopy and, when properly positioned, appears at the level of the aortic valve annulus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cannula</td>
<td>The cannula (12 Fr for the Impella® 2.5, 14 Fr for the Impella CP®, 21 Fr for the Impella® 5.0 and LD) has a spiral-shaped reinforced body that is angled for the Impella® 2.5, 5.0 and Impella CP® Catheters and straight for the Impella® LD. The cannula is made of nitinol and covered in polyurethane.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Differential pressure sensor</td>
<td>This sensor on the Impella® 5.0 and LD Catheters measures the pressure difference between the inside and outside of the cannula. The pressure value is used for positioning during placement and for monitoring flow and position during catheter operation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outlet area</td>
<td>The proximal end of the cannula is attached to the outlet area where the blood exits the cannula.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EasyGuide lumen</td>
<td>The red loading lumen on the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® runs from the tip of the pigtail through the outlet area of the cannula to facilitate loading the catheter onto the guidewire.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor housing</td>
<td>The motor housing (12 Fr for the Impella® 2.5, 14 Fr for Impella CP®, 21 Fr for Impella® 5.0 and LD) consists of an encapsulated motor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Silicone plugs</td>
<td>The two silicone plugs on the catheter shaft of the Impella® LD help control bleeding during and after the Impella® LD Catheter insertion process and while advancing the catheter through the Dacron® vascular graft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Open pressure area</td>
<td>The open pressure area on the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters is an opening located between the motor housing and the distal end of the catheter shaft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catheter shaft</td>
<td>A 9 Fr catheter shaft is located between the motor housing and the red Impella® plug. The lumen of the catheter shaft contains a purge lumen, a pressure measurement lumen (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®), a nitinol wire, and an electrical cable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The catheter shaft has longitudinal and transversal marks:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The longitudinal mark along the inner radius shows correct position of the placement guidewire once backloaded on the Impella® Catheter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The transversal marks at 1 cm intervals with numbers every 5 cm aid in proper positioning.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 3.3 Impella® Catheter Components (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Repositioning unit</td>
<td>The repositioning unit on the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP® Catheters consists of a sheath, an anticontamination sleeve with an anchoring ring, and suture pads.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The sheath (with hemostatic valve) is graduated from 9 Fr to 15 Fr. It is located on the catheter shaft and allows repositioning of the catheter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A guidewire access port on the Impella CP® may be used to facilitate insertion of a 0.035&quot; (or smaller) guidewire into the arteriotomy prior to removal of the Impella® Catheter. A stylet maintains the patency of the guidewire lumen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The anchoring ring of the anticontamination sleeve secures the sheath to the catheter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The StatLock® compatible suture pads help secure the repositioning sheath to the patient’s skin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red Impella® plug</td>
<td>The red Impella® plug at the proximal end of the catheter connects the catheter to the Automated Impella® Controller through a connector cable. It contains:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Memory that retains operating parameters in case the patient needs to be transferred to another controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A pressure transducer (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters) that translates pressure for the pressure lumen proximal to the motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• The placement signal lumen (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters) that allows for pressure and waveform displays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Red pressure sidearm</td>
<td>The red pressure sidearm on the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters is attached to a standard pressure bag and is used to prime the line of the pressure measurement system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear sidearm</td>
<td>The clear sidearm is attached to the purge cassette tubing. It leads to the infusion filter, the pressure reservoir, and the check valve.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusion filter</td>
<td>The infusion filter prevents bacterial contamination and air from entering the purge lumen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure reservoir</td>
<td>The pressure reservoir includes a flexible rubber diaphragm that provides additional filling volume by means of an expansion chamber during purge solution change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Check valve</td>
<td>The yellow check valve ensures that purge fluid does not flow in the reverse direction when the purge solution is exchanged.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE SENSOR FOR IMPELLA® 5.0 AND LD

The Impella® 5.0 and LD Catheters have an electronic differential pressure sensor located at the proximal end of the 21 Fr cannula. The purpose of the pressure sensor is to generate the placement signal, which is used by operators and the controller to monitor the position of the Impella® cannula relative to the aortic valve.
The pressure sensor is a flexible membrane integrated into the cannula (see Figure 3.5). One side of the sensor is exposed to the blood pressure on the outside of the cannula and the other side is exposed to the pressure of the blood inside of the cannula. The sensor generates an electrical signal proportional to the difference between the pressure outside the cannula and the pressure inside. This signal is displayed on the Automated Impella® Controller as the placement signal.

**Figure 3.5  Impella® 5.0 and LD Differential Pressure Sensor (Impella® 5.0 shown)**

The pressure sensor membrane flexes when the pressure on one side is different from the pressure on the other side, and the electrical properties of the membrane change when it flexes. This allows the sensor to generate an electrical signal proportional to how much the membrane is flexed, and thus proportional to the difference between the pressure on the outside of the cannula and the pressure inside. When the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is placed in the correct position across the aortic valve, the top (outer surface) of the sensor is exposed to the aortic pressure and the bottom (inner surface) of the sensor is exposed to the ventricular pressure. Therefore, the placement signal is approximately equal to the difference between the aortic pressure and the ventricular pressure (see Figure 3.6).

**Figure 3.6  Electrical Signal Generated by the Cardiac Cycle**
When the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is correctly positioned across the aortic valve, the changes in pressure associated with the cardiac cycle result in a pulsatile placement signal (see Figure 3.7). During diastole (time zero in Figure 3.6), the large pressure difference between the aorta and the left ventricle creates a large electrical signal. Then at the peak of systole, when the aortic valve opens, the pressure difference between the aorta and the left ventricle—and thus the electrical signal—is zero. Thus, the continual pressure changes associated with the cardiac cycle produce the pulsatile (up and down) waveform seen on the Automated Impella® Controller display.

**Figure 3.7 Correct Impella® 5.0/LD Catheter Positioning and Pulsatile Placement Signal**

When the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is not properly placed across the aortic valve, or when it is fully in the aorta or fully in the ventricle, the pressures outside and inside the cannula are the same throughout the cardiac cycle. As a result, the pressure on either side of the sensor membrane is the same, resulting in a flat placement signal (see Figure 3.8).

**Figure 3.8 Incorrect Impella® 5.0/LD Catheter Positioning and Flat Placement Signal**
AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER

The Automated Impella® Controller (see Figure 3.9) provides three vital functions to the operation of the Impella® Catheter:

- The controller provides an interface for monitoring and controlling the function of the Impella® Catheter
- The controller provides a purge fluid to the Impella® Catheter
- The controller provides backup power when the Impella Ventricular Support Systems are operated away from AC power

The controller weighs 26 lbs (11.8 kg) and can operate on its internal battery for at least 60 minutes when fully charged.

Automated Impella® Controller operation is described in detail in section 4 of this manual.

Figure 3.9   Automated Impella® Controller – Front View
PURGE CASSETTE

Do not use saline in the purge system.

The purge cassette delivers rinsing fluid to the Impella® Catheter. The purge fluid (typically 5% dextrose solution) flows from the purge cassette through the catheter to the microaxial blood pump to prevent blood from entering the motor. When the purge cassette is properly installed in the Automated Impella® Controller, the Abiomed logo is upright and facing you. Figure 3.10 illustrates the purge cassette and related components. Table 3.4 describes each component.

Y connector

The Y connector attached to the purge tubing is used for the initial set-up configuration of the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Systems (see Figure 3.2a). Switch to the standard configuration (see Figure 3.2b) as soon as practical.

Disconnect and discard the Y connector from the purge tubing when setting up the Impella® 5.0 or LD Systems and connect the yellow luer on the end of the purge tubing directly to the yellow luer on the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter as shown in Figure 3.3.

Figure 3.10 Purge Cassette
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purge fluid spike</td>
<td>One end spikes the purge fluid bag and the other end connects the bag to the purge cassette supply line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply line</td>
<td>Carries fluid from the purge fluid bag to the purge cassette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purge cassette</td>
<td>Contains the components for delivering the purge fluid; the purge fluid maintains the pressure barrier between the blood and the motor to prevent blood from entering the motor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purge disc</td>
<td>Transmits pressure to the controller based on the purge pressure in the purge tubing; a sensor in the controller measures the pressure so that it can be displayed on the screen and used by the purge pressure algorithm to maintain the purge pressure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purge tubing</td>
<td>Carries purge fluid from the purge cassette to the Impella® Catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Yellow luer connector</td>
<td>Connects the purge tubing to the Y connector at case start (for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) and to the check valve (yellow luer lock) on the Impella® Catheter after system change and initial setup of Impella® 5.0 and LD.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Y connector (for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® only) | Adapter that connects the purge tubing to the sidearms of the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter during case start. The Y connector consist of:  
  - Yellow luer that connects to the clear sidearm  
  - Red luer that connects to the red sidearm  
  - Cap for the red luer when it is disconnected from the sidearm for transfer to the standard configuration  
  - Clamp for the purge tubing leading to the red sidearm  
  - Rectangular antibacterial air filter |
ACCESSORIES

Table 3.5 illustrates and describes the accessories used with the Impella® Catheter and Automated Impella® Controller.

Table 3.5  Impella® Catheter and Automated Impella® Controller Accessories

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Figure 3.11  White Connector Cable** | The white connector cable connects the Impella® Catheter to the Automated Impella® Controller. Clips on the cable are used to secure the purge tubing to the cable.  
- The socket at the black end of the cable connects to the Impella® Catheter plug.  
- The white plug at the opposite end of the cable is inserted into the blue catheter plug on the front of the Automated Impella® Controller. |
| **Figure 3.12  Impella® 2.5 Introducer Kit** | The Impella® 2.5 introducer kit is used to gain arterial access for the Impella® 2.5 Catheter. It contains:  
- Peel-away introducer—with hemostatic valve for tight fit around components and single-step “break-away” configuration  
- Dilator—easy to insert and remove with soft design for atraumatic approach into femoral artery  
- 18 G Seldinger needle  
- 12 cc syringe  
- 0.035 inch stiff access guidewire |
| **Figure 3.13  Impella CP® Introducer Kit** | The Impella CP® introducer kit is used to gain arterial access for the Impella CP® Catheter. It contains:  
- 14 Fr peel-away introducer—with hemostatic valve for tight fit around components and single-step “break-away” configuration  
- 8 Fr, 10 Fr, 12 Fr, and 14 Fr dilators—easy to insert and remove with soft design for atraumatic approach into femoral artery  
- 0.035 inch stiff access guidewire |
| **Figure 3.14  Silicone Plugs (Impella® 5.0/LD)** | The two silicone plugs can be placed around the catheter shaft to help control bleeding during and after Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter insertion and while advancing the catheter through the vascular graft. (Note: The two silicone plugs are preassembled on the Impella® LD catheter shaft.) |
### Component Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Impella® Axillary Insertion Kit (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP®)</strong></td>
<td>The Impella® Axillary Insertion kit facilitates placement of the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter via the axillary artery. It contains a 23 Fr diameter x 6 cm length peel-away introducer and two (2) graft locks used to attach a graft onto the introducer. (Note: Only one graft lock is required when used with the recommended Hemashield Platinum graft; a back-up is provided.) The kit is packaged with an 8 Fr silicone-coated lubrication dilator and 2 silicone plugs (not shown). It is recommended to be used in conjunction with a 10 mm diameter x 20 cm length Hemashield Platinum graft.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Placement Guidewire</strong></td>
<td>The 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire is used for the placement of the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter. The guidewire has a radiopaque, shapable tip.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dextrose Solution</strong></td>
<td>Hospital Provided: Dextrose solution (typically 5% dextrose in water with 50 IU/mL of heparin) is used as the purge fluid through the Impella® Catheter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Automated Impella® Controller Cart</strong></td>
<td>The Automated Impella® Controller cart holds the Automated Impella® Controller. The cart has wheels for easy transport of the controller and a storage basket.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Guidewire Use

It is important to use only the guidewire supplied with the system or an Abiomed-approved alternative. Refer to Appendix B for more information about Abiomed-approved guidewires.
OVERVIEW ........................................................................................................4.1
AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER FEATURES ........................................4.2
HOME SCREEN .................................................................................................4.6
PLACEMENT SCREEN .........................................................................................4.9
  Placement Signal Waveform ..........................................................................4.9
  Motor Current Waveform ..............................................................................4.10
PURGE SCREEN ...............................................................................................4.10
  Purge Flow ....................................................................................................4.11
  Purge Pressure ..............................................................................................4.11
INFUSION HISTORY SCREEN ........................................................................4.11
MOBILE OPERATION .........................................................................................4.12
OVERVIEW

The Automated Impella® Controller is the primary user control interface for the Impella® Catheter. It controls the Impella® Catheter performance, monitors the catheter for alarms, and provides real-time catheter position information regarding the location of the catheter across the aortic valve. The controller can be powered by AC power or can operate on internal battery power for at least 60 minutes when fully charged.

This section of the manual discusses Automated Impella® Controller features and displays.
**AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER FEATURES**

**IMPORTANT NOTE:** The underside of the Automated Impella® Controller has a battery switch to turn on the batteries. This switch is turned off for shipping purposes. Before operating the Automated Impella® Controller for the first time, make sure you turn this switch on. If the battery switch is not turned on, the Automated Impella® Controller will not be able to operate on battery power.

Figure 4.1 illustrates the features on the front of the Automated Impella® Controller. These features are described in Table 4.1.

---

**Figure 4.1 Automated Impella® Controller Features – Front View**
### Table 4.1  Automated Impella® Controller Front View Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Display screen</td>
<td>Displays user information, including the labels for the soft buttons. (Display screen elements described in detail later in this section.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Soft buttons       | Display, open, and close menus. The function for each soft button is defined by labels adjacent to the button on the display screen; function changes depending on the screen. (Soft button functions are described in Table 4.3.) When the Impella® Catheter is running, the default soft button labels are as follows:  
  - MUTE ALARM  
  - FLOW CONTROL  
  - DISPLAY  
  - PURGE SYSTEM  
  - MENU |
| Power indicator    | LED light above the selector knob; indicates the power status of the Automated Impella® Controller.  
  - Green light—controller is on and plugged into AC power or running on battery power  
  - Amber light—controller is off but plugged into AC power  
  - No light—controller is off and not plugged into AC power |
| Selector knob      | Rotating push button; turn clockwise and counterclockwise to navigate through menu items; push to make a selection.                            |
| Purge disc         | A flexible diaphragm on the purge cassette tubing used to monitor purge pressure and regulate purge flow.                                      |
| Catheter plug      | Connection point on the controller for the connector cable that connects to the Impella® Catheter.                                              |
| Purge cassette     | Contains the components for delivering the purge fluid; maintains the pressure barrier between the blood and the motor to prevent blood from entering the motor. (The purge cassette and its components are described in section 3 of this manual.) |
| Purge cassette door| Spring-loaded door that opens to provide access to the purge cassette.                                                                        |

### Display Options

If equipped with a VGA connector, the controller can be connected to a monitor to display information on another screen as described under “Slave Monitor Connection” in section 9 of this manual.

### Selector Knob Function

**Rotate** the selector knob on the controller to navigate through menu items.  
**Push** the selector knob to confirm your selection.
Figure 4.2 illustrates the features on the left and right sides of the Automated Impella® Controller. These features are described in Table 4.2.

**Figure 4.2 Automated Impella® Controller Features – Side Views**
### Table 4.2 Automated Impella® Controller Side View Features

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bed mount</td>
<td>Metal bracket on the back of the controller; attaches controller to the cart or bed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purge cassette door release</td>
<td>Button located on the left side of the controller; press to open the purge cassette door</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VGA OUT</td>
<td>Connection for connecting the controller to another monitor to slave the display</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USB connector</td>
<td>Interface for data transfer by Abiomed maintenance or service personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service</td>
<td>Connection used by Abiomed maintenance or service personnel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC fuses</td>
<td>Electrical safety device in the event of current overload</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AC plug</td>
<td>Connection point on the controller for the AC power cord</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power switch</td>
<td>Button that turns the controller on or off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>ON</strong>: Press and hold the power switch for 3 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• <strong>OFF</strong>: (1) Disconnect the Impella® Catheter from the Automated Impella® Controller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(2) Press and hold the power switch for 3 seconds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(3) A pop-up confirmation box will appear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(4) Press <strong>OK</strong> using the selector knob to confirm that the controller should be turned off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>NOTE: Holding down the power switch for longer than 30 seconds during operation will cause the controller to initiate an emergency shutdown</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Equipotential ground stud</td>
<td>Used to ground the Automated Impella® Controller according to hospital procedures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethernet jack</td>
<td>Connection for downloading data</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HOME SCREEN

The home screen displays operating parameters and information for the entire Impella Ventricular Support Systems. Figure 4.3 illustrates the home screen. Each element of the display is described in Table 4.3.

Table 4.3 Automated Impella® Controller Display Elements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alarm window</td>
<td>The alarm window displays up to 3 alarms simultaneously, in order of priority from top to bottom. For each alarm, the alarm window displays:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Alarm header – displayed in the left column; window is color-coded red for critical alarms, yellow for serious alarms, white for advisory notifications, gray for resolved alarms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Detailed text – up to 3 lines of instructions for resolving the alarm condition are displayed in the right column of the alarm window next to the alarm header and subhead information</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(See section 8 of this manual for further discussion of alarms.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catheter serial number</td>
<td>Displayed in the upper left of the display screen if a catheter is connected to the controller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System date and time</td>
<td>The current date (YYYY-DD-MM) and time (24-hour format; HH:MM) are displayed in the upper center of the screen display. (In this example it is July 22, 2016 at 2:29pm.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 4.3 Automated Impella® Controller Display Elements (continued)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mute alarm indicator</td>
<td>Displayed in place of the words “MUTE ALARM” when an alarm is silenced. (See section 8 of this manual for more information about the mute alarm function; Figure 8.1 illustrates the mute alarm indicator.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Yellow bell with red X displayed when an alarm is muted</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Not displayed when an alarm is active (but not muted) or when there are no active alarms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Soft button labels</td>
<td>The soft buttons on the Automated Impella® Controller have corresponding labels adjacent to them on the display screen. These labels change depending on the type of screen displayed. (Refer to Appendix C in this manual for more details about the menu structure.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>MUTE ALARM</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Mutes (silences) active alarms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>FLOW CONTROL</strong> (or NEXT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- FLOW CONTROL – Allows you to control the flow of the Impella® Catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- NEXT – Advances to the next screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>DISPLAY</strong> (or BACK)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- DISPLAY – Brings up the Display menu for viewing waveforms and navigating to other screen displays</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- BACK – Returns to the previous screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>PURGE SYSTEM</strong> (or EXIT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- PURGE SYSTEM – Brings up the Purge System menu for changing the purge fluid, purge cassette, or purge system; de-airing the purge system; or transferring to the standard configuration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- EXIT – Exits the current procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>MENU</strong> (or CANCEL)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- MENU – Brings up a menu of options related to controller settings, alarm history, and starting a case</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- CANCEL – Exits out of current Menu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System power area</td>
<td>System power information is displayed to the right of the purge system information on the bottom of the display screen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Battery status – Bar within battery symbol indicates the overall remaining capacity of the batteries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Full green bar for fully charged battery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Partial green bar for battery that is at least 50% charged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Partial yellow bar for battery that is between 16% and 50% charged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Partial red bar for battery that is less than or equal to 15% charged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Moving gray bar for battery that is in charging mode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Percentage of battery power remaining displayed below the battery icon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>AC plug indicator</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Green plug indicates that the controller is running on AC power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Gray plug with a red X indicates no AC power detected and the controller is running on battery power</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 4.3 Automated Impella® Controller Display Elements (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Display Element</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Purge system area** | Information about the purge system is displayed to the right of the flow area at the bottom of the display screen.  
  Purge system marquee—scrolls from left to right when purge system is operating  
  - Slow scrolling represents normal purge flow rate  
  - Fast scrolling represents bolus flow rate and priming flow rate  
  Y connector icon (for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)  
  - Appears above the purge system marquee when the Impella Ventricular Support Systems are configured using the Y connector in the set-up configuration  
**Purge flow**  
- Current purge flow displayed in mL/hr below the purge system marquee if the purge flow is known  
- Not displayed when the purge system is stabilizing, when there is no purge cassette, or when the procedure has not yet started  
**Purge pressure**  
- Current purge pressure (pressure of the purge fluid delivered through the catheter to the motor) displayed in mmHg below the purge flow |

| **Flow area** | Information about Impella® Catheter flow is displayed in the lower left corner of the display screen.  
  **Max/Min**  
  - Max/Min displays the range for the flow rate  
**Current flow rate**  
- Mean catheter flow displayed in liters per minute (L/min)—the numbers appear in white if the catheter position is correct; yellow if the catheter position is incorrect or unknown  
- If the system is unable to calculate flow, a yellow triangular caution icon is displayed with the message “Flow Calculation Disabled”  
**Catheter operation icon**  
- The circular catheter operation icon rotates when the Impella® Catheter is running |

**Purge System Stabilization**

The purge system must stabilize after case start, a purge procedure, or resolution of a purge alarm. During this time, it may take up to 3 minutes for purge system information to display on the screen.
PLACEMENT SCREEN

The placement screen (see Figure 4.4) displays real-time operating data for the system. The screen displays the placement signal and motor current waveforms as well as the maximum/minimum and average values for each waveform in the central display area of the screen.

Use the DISPLAY soft button to navigate to the placement screen.

Figure 4.4   Placement Screen

Figure 4.4 shows two time-based waveform signals from different sources.

- Placement signal waveform
- Motor current waveform

PLACEMENT SIGNAL WAVEFORM

The placement signal waveform displays a pressure measurement that is useful for determining the location of the open pressure area of the catheter with respect to the aortic valve. The placement signal is used to verify whether the Impella® Catheter is in the aorta or in the ventricle by evaluating the current pressure waveform as an aortic or ventricular waveform (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) or by evaluating the differential pressure as pulsatile or flattened (Impella® 5.0 and LD). The scale for the placement signal waveform is displayed to the left of the waveform. The default scaling is 0–160 mmHg (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) or -20–60 mmHg (Impella® 5.0 and LD). For Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®, it can be adjusted in 20 mmHg increments, with a minimum upper limit of 100 mmHg and a maximum upper limit of 240 mmHg. For Impella® 5.0 and LD, the maximum display range is -60–100 mmHg.

To the right of the waveform is a display that labels the waveform, provides the units of measurement, and shows the maximum and minimum values and the average value from the samples received. At the bottom of that window is the time scale, which you can set by pressing the DISPLAY soft button.

Retrograde Flow

A setting of P-0 will result in retrograde flow when the Impella® Catheter is placed across the aortic valve. Retrograde flow may also occur at P-1.
**MOTOR CURRENT WAVEFORM**

Motor current is a measure of the energy intake of the Impella® Catheter motor. The energy intake varies with motor speed and the pressure difference between the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula. Motor current (see Figure 4.4) provides information about the catheter position relative to the aortic valve. When the Impella® Catheter is positioned correctly, with the inlet area in the ventricle and the outlet area in the aorta, the motor current is pulsatile because the pressure difference between the inlet and outlet areas changes with the cardiac cycle. When the inlet and outlet areas are on the same side of the aortic valve, the motor current will be dampened or flat because there is little or no pressure difference between the inlet and outlet areas.

The scale for the motor current waveform is displayed to the left of the waveform. The default scaling is 0–1000 mA. It is adjustable in 100 mA increments for the Impella® Catheter, with a minimum difference between upper and lower limits of 200 mA and a maximum difference of 1000 mA.

To the right of the waveform is a display that labels the waveform, provides the units of measurement, and shows the maximum and minimum values and the average value from the samples received. You can set the time scale at the bottom of that window by pressing the **DISPLAY** soft button.

**PURGE SCREEN**

The purge screen (see Figure 4.5) displays purge system data. In the central display area of the screen, the purge flow rate and purge pressure are plotted as a function of time. To the right of the plots, the current purge flow rate and purge pressure are displayed.

Use the **DISPLAY** soft button to navigate to the purge screen.

![Figure 4.5 Purge Screen](image)
**PURGE FLOW**

The purge flow rate delivered by the purge cassette is displayed in mL/hr. The standard scale for the purge flow (0–30 mL/hr) is displayed to the left of the purge flow plot. The maximum value on this scale can be adjusted from 20 mL/hr to 200 mL/hr in increments of 10 mL/hr.

To the right of the plot is a display that labels the plot and shows the most recent value update. You can set the time scale at the bottom of the window by pressing the **DISPLAY** soft button.

A purge flow change notification can be enabled to indicate when the purge flow rate increases or decreases by 2.5 mL/h. The message is intended to aid patient management by alerting the clinician to changes in the rates of dextrose and heparin infusion through the purge fluid. The alarm clears when you press the **MUTE ALARM** button. This alarm is disabled by default. To enable this alarm, press **MENU**, select Settings/Service, and select Enable Purge Flow Change Notification.

**PURGE PRESSURE**

The Automated Impella® Controller regulates purge pressure, the pressure of the purge fluid delivered through the catheter to the motor. The purge pressure generated by the purge cassette is displayed in mmHg. The standard scale for the purge pressure (0–1500 mmHg) is displayed to the left of the purge pressure plot. The maximum value on this scale can be adjusted from 100 mmHg to 2000 mmHg in increments of 100 mmHg. An alarm appears if purge pressure falls below 300 mmHg or exceeds 1100 mmHg.

To the right of the plot is a display that labels the plot and shows the most recent value update. You can set the time scale at the bottom of the window by pressing the **DISPLAY** soft button.

**INFUSION HISTORY SCREEN**

The infusion history screen displays the infusion volume as well as the amount of heparin and dextrose infused each hour. The current time period is displayed at the top of the list.

Use the **DISPLAY** soft button to navigate to the infusion history screen.

Figure 4.6 shows a sample infusion history screen.
4.12 Instructions for Use & Clinical Reference Manual (US)

Figure 4.6 Infusion History Screen

MOBILE OPERATION

The Li-Ion batteries must be charged for 5 hours prior to system operation in order to meet the runtime requirement of 1 hour. Failure to do so will yield a shorter runtime. After being unplugged, the Automated Impella® Controller will operate for at least 60 minutes after the batteries have been fully charged.

The Automated Impella® Controller can be operated on internal battery power when it is not connected to AC power.

1. Disconnect the Automated Impella® Controller from AC power.

2. The Automated Impella® Controller beeps once every 5 minutes to alert you that it is running on battery power and a white advisory notification appears in the alarms area on the screen. The AC power icon turns gray with an X through it.

3. When the Automated Impella® Controller is connected back to AC power, the white advisory notification turns gray and the AC power icon turns green.
5 USING THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER WITH THE IMPELLA® CATHETER

PRE-SUPPORT EVALUATION .............................................................................................................. 5.1
   Alternative Sheaths and Surgical Techniques ........................................................................... 5.1

STARTUP ............................................................................................................................................... 5.2
   Supplies Needed .......................................................................................................................... 5.2
   Turning On the Automated Impella® Controller ....................................................................... 5.3
   The Startup Screen ...................................................................................................................... 5.4

CASE START .......................................................................................................................................... 5.5
   Case Start ........................................................................................................................................ 5.5
   Insert Purge Cassette ..................................................................................................................... 5.6
   Connect the Impella® Catheter ..................................................................................................... 5.7
   Priming the Purge (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) .................................................................... 5.8
   Enter Purge Fluid Data .................................................................................................................. 5.9
   Secure the Purge Tubing ................................................................................................................ 5.10
   Impella System Set-up Configuration ......................................................................................... 5.11

IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER INSERTION (WIRED) ............................................................................. 5.11

WIRELESS INSERTION OF THE IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER .................................................... 5.16
   Overview ........................................................................................................................................ 5.16
   Wireless Insertion Technique ....................................................................................................... 5.16
   Recommendations for Handling the Impella® 2.5 Catheter ..................................................... 5.16

IMPELLA CP® CATHETER INSERTION ........................................................................................ 5.17

AXILLARY INSERTION OF THE IMPELLA® 2.5, 5.0, OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER ............... 5.21

ALTERNATE INSERTION TECHNIQUE FOR THE IMPELLA® 5.0 CATHETER .............................. 5.26
   Technique for Femoral Artery Insertion ...................................................................................... 5.26
   Insertion Technique Using a Sidearm Graft ............................................................................... 5.28

IMPLANTING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER ..................................................... 5.30
   Implantation Preparation .............................................................................................................. 5.30

POSITIONING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP® CATHETERS ............... 5.33
   Modes of Operation ...................................................................................................................... 5.34
   Use of the Repositioning Sheath and Peel-Away Introducer ..................................................... 5.36
   Transfer to Standard Configuration ............................................................................................ 5.38

Continued on next page
POSITIONING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® 5.0 CATHETER.............. 5.39

POSITIONING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER........... 5.43

PURGE CASSETTE PROCEDURES ................................................. 5.46
  Change Purge System................................................................ 5.46
  Change Purge Fluid .................................................................. 5.47
  Change Purge Cassette .............................................................. 5.48
  De-Air Purge System ............................................................... 5.49

TROUBLESHOOTING THE PURGE SYSTEM ................................. 5.49
  Low Purge Pressure ................................................................. 5.49
  Purge System Open .................................................................. 5.50
  High Purge Pressure .............................................................. 5.50
  Purge System Blocked ............................................................. 5.50

PATIENT WEANING .................................................................. 5.51

REMOVING THE IMPELLA® 2.5, 5.0, OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER .. 5.51
  Removing the Impella® with the Introducer in Place .................. 5.51
  Removing the Impella® Secured with the Repositioning Sheath .... 5.52
  Removing the Impella CP® While Maintaining Guidewire Access (for Pumps
  that have the Repositioning Sheath with Guidewire Access) ........ 5.52

EXPLANTING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER ............................... 5.53
  Preparation for Explant ............................................................ 5.53
  Pulling the Impella® LD Catheter into the Ascending Aorta ........... 5.54
  Vascular Graft Closure ............................................................ 5.54
PRE-SUPPORT EVALUATION

Before initiating the procedure, evaluate the patient for factors that may prevent successful placement of the Impella® Catheter. Use imaging technology to examine the patient’s vasculature and femoral access site. An echo assessment of the left ventricle is also recommended to rule out left ventricular thrombus, mechanical aortic valves, or severe aortic insufficiency.

Table 5.1 Evaluation Prior to Inserting the Impella® Catheter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Technology</th>
<th>Observations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Standard traditional angiography</td>
<td>• LV thrombus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA)</td>
<td>• Mechanical aortic valve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Coronary computed tomography angiography (CTA)</td>
<td>• Aortic valve stenosis / calcification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Ultrasound</td>
<td>• Moderate to severe aortic insufficiency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Echocardiography</td>
<td>• Tortuous iliac artery (see below)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Severe peripheral arterial obstructive disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Multiple access (scar tissue)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Obesity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• RV failure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Minimal 7 mm vessel diameter (Impella® 5.0)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 5.2 Additional Considerations Prior to Inserting the Impella® LD Catheter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impella® LD Considerations</th>
<th>Explanations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quality of access</td>
<td>Examine the ascending aorta to evaluate the quality of access in the 7 cm between the aortic valve and potential insertion point; look for signs of calcification</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular access</td>
<td>Assess the aortic root and ascending aorta for any factor that may impede Impella® LD insertion. Use the incision template to confirm a minimum of 7 cm from the aortic valve annulus to the graft incision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemodynamic monitoring</td>
<td>Consider inserting a Swan-Ganz catheter to provide continuous hemodynamic monitoring, including pulmonary artery and central venous pressures, measurement of cardiac output, and SvO₂.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALTERNATIVE SHEATHS AND SURGICAL TECHNIQUES

If the patient has a tortuous iliac artery, an alternative 30 cm sheath can be used for insertion of the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter. The Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters can also be inserted surgically.
STARTUP

Do NOT use an Impella Ventricular Support Systems if any part of the system is damaged.

The sterile components of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems can be used only if the sterilization indicators show that the contents have been sterilized, the packaging is not damaged, and the expiration date has not elapsed.

Do NOT resterilize or reuse the Impella® Catheter. It is a disposable device and is intended for single use only.

To prevent malfunction of the Automated Impella® Controller, avoid long-term exposure to direct sunlight and excessive heat (40°C).

To prevent overheating and improper operation, do NOT block the cooling vents of the Automated Impella® Controller while it is operating.

The Li-Ion batteries must be charged for 5 hours prior to system operation in order to meet the runtime requirement of 1 hour. Failure to do so will yield a shorter runtime. After being unplugged, the Automated Impella® Controller will operate for at least 60 minutes after the batteries have been fully charged.

Have a backup Automated Impella® Controller, purge cassette, connector cable, and Impella® Catheter available in the unlikely event of a device failure.

SUPPLIES NEEDED

- Automated Impella® Controller
- Impella® Catheter
- Set-up and Insertion kit (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- Diagnostic catheter (AL1 or MP without side holes or pigtail with or without side holes) (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP®)
- 5–8 Fr introducer (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- 10 Fr dilator (Impella® 2.5)
- Standard 0.035”x175 cm J-tip guidewire (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- Standard IV infusion set (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- Normal saline flush solution with pressure bag (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®)
- 500 cc bag of dextrose solution for purge solution (20% recommended; 5% to 20% acceptable) with 50 IU heparin/mL
- Impella® Axillary Insertion kit for axillary insertion of the Impella® (Impella® 2.5, 5.0, and Impella CP® only)
- 8 or 10 mm x 20 cm Dacron vascular graft (if using Axillary Insertion kit or optional for femoral insertion of Impella® 5.0)
- 6 or 8 Fr sheath (if using Axillary Insertion kit or if using vascular graft for Impella® 5.0)
- 10 mm diameter x 15 cm length Dacron® vascular graft (Impella® LD)
If using the Axillary Insertion kit with the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter, the following are recommended: vessel loops, vascular clamp, 10 mm diameter x 20 cm length Hemashield Platinum graft, number 2 sutures or umbilical tape, 4 Fr–6 Fr pigtail or diagnostic catheter of choice to achieve an apical wire placement while avoiding a subannular wire position, diagnostic 0.035 inch guidewire, and Abiomed 0.018 inch placement guidewire.

**TURNING ON THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER**

To turn the controller on:

1. Press and hold the power switch on the right side of the Automated Impella® Controller for 3 seconds (see Figure 5.1).

![Power Switch on Right Side of Impella® Controller](Image)

*Figure 5.1 Automated Impella® Controller Power Switch*

The Automated Impella® Controller automatically performs a system test when turned on.

A display bar shows the progress of the system test. If the system test passes, the system displays the startup screen (see Figure 5.2).

If the system test fails, the controller displays a system self check failure message:

```
SYSTEM SELF CHECK FAILED.
CHANGE CONSOLE IMMEDIATELY.
```

The controller displays the reason for the system test failure at the bottom of the screen.
THE STARTUP SCREEN

The startup screen (see Figure 5.2) appears when you successfully turn on the Automated Impella® Controller.

![Automated Impella® Controller Startup Screen](image)

The startup screen displays the current version of the software that the Automated Impella® Controller is running.

The startup screen also displays system power information along the bottom of the screen and three active soft buttons—**MUTE ALARM**, **MENU**, and **START NEW CASE**—along the right side of the screen.

### Check Date and Time

The current date and time appear at the top of the startup screen. Confirm that these are correct. For more information, refer to Appendix C.
## CASE START

- Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® Catheter and, for the Impella CP®, during rewire through the guidewire access port. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.
- The sterile components of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems can be used only if the sterilization indicators show that the contents have been sterilized, the packaging is not damaged, and the expiration date has not elapsed.
- Avoid manual compression of the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula assembly.
- Do **NOT** remove the Impella® Catheter over the length of the guidewire.
- Handle with care. The Impella® Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do **NOT** bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.
- During case start, make sure the yellow luer connection between the purge tubing and Y connector is tightened and not leaking (for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®).
- Do **NOT** kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do **NOT** kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.

### Sensitive Medical Device

The Impella® Catheter is a sensitive medical device with extremely fine tolerances. In particular, the inlet and outlet areas of the catheter assembly may be damaged if subjected to strong external forces.

---

### CASE START

1. Press the **START NEW CASE** soft button from the startup screen or plug in a new Impella® Catheter. “Case Start” can also be selected by pressing the **MENU** soft key.

2. The controller displays the screen shown in Figure 5.3.

![Initial Case Start Screen](image)

**Figure 5.3 Initial Case Start Screen**
INSERT PURGE CASSETTE

1. Open the purge cassette package.
2. Secure the red and yellow luers to the sterile field (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) or discard the Y-connector and secure the yellow luer connector on the purge tubing to the sterile field (Impella® 5.0 and LD).
3. Pass the purge cassette and spike off the sterile field.
4. Spike the fluid bag/bottle.
5. Press the NEXT soft button to continue.
6. Open the purge cassette door by pressing the release on the left side of the controller. Insert the purge cassette into the Automated Impella® Controller (as shown in Figure 5.4 and described in the steps that follow).

Shaded Steps
All shaded steps require sterile technique.

Purge Solution Bottles
If the purge solution is supplied in bottles, open the vent on the purge fluid spike and follow the same procedure as if supplied in bags.

Connect Purge Disc Within 3 Seconds
The instructions for inserting the purge disc appear if it is not snapped into place within 3 seconds of inserting the purge cassette.

Close Purge Cassette Door
Once the purge cassette is installed, be sure to close the purge cassette door to prevent the purge cassette from being dislodged accidentally.

Figure 5.4 Inserting Purge Cassette into Automated Impella® Controller

7. Insert the purge cassette into the compartment on the front of the controller. Follow the diagram on the inside of the purge cassette door for proper placement.
8. Slide the purge disc into the slot to the right of the purge cassette until it snaps into place. The controller will automatically begin priming the purge cassette.
9. Extend the purge tubing and close the purge cassette door. There is sufficient room around the edges of the purge cassette door so that it will not pinch the purge tubing as it exits.
10. The controller automatically begins priming the purge cassette after it is inserted. The progress bar shown in Figure 5.3 marks the progress of the purge cassette priming.
CONNECT THE IMPELLA® CATHETER

1. Remove the Impella® Catheter from its package using sterile technique and inspect the catheter, including its connector, for damage.

2. Remove the white connector cable from its package using sterile technique.

3. Inspect the cable for damage, including damage to the connector pins at the controller end.

4. Secure the grey end of the cable to the sterile field.

5. Insert the catheter plug into the connector cable socket (grey end). The tab and the slot must be aligned during connection (see Figure 5.5).

6. Pull back on the connection to make sure that the plug has snapped into place.

7. Snap the purge clip (located on the pressure reservoir of the clear sidearm) to the connector cable as shown in Figure 5.6.

8. Pass the sterile connector cable from the Impella® Catheter off the sterile field.

9. Line up the notch on the connector cable with the notch in the blue catheter plug on the front of the Automated Impella® Controller and plug the cable into the controller.

Important Step

Snapping the purge clip on the pressure reservoir to the connector cable is important to prevent the tube from kinking.
10. Connect and tighten the luer(s) on the purge tubing to the Impella® Catheter sidearm(s) as shown in Figure 5.7. If using the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter, disconnect and discard the Y connector with red and yellow luers from the purge tubing.

![Figure 5.7 Connecting the Luer(s) to the Impella® Catheter (Impella CP® shown)](image)

11. When the controller detects that the luer(s) are connected, it automatically begins priming the purge lumen (Figure 5.8).

**PRIMING THE PURGE (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)**

4a. Snap on Purge Clip.

4b. Connect Impella Catheter using luers:
   - YELLOW to YELLOW
   - RED to RED

![Figure 5.8 Connecting the Impella Catheter using the luers](image)

12. Prime the Impella 2.5® or Impella CP® placement signal lumen by squeezing the sides of the white flush valve for 10 seconds (see Figure 5.9) until the Automated Impella® Controller beeps. The progress bar shows the progress of the priming.
**5.9 Impella Ventricular Support Systems for Use During Cardiogenic Shock**

**Figure 5.9  Squeezing the White Flush Valve to Prime the Placement Signal Lumen**

13. When the system detects that the flush solution has reached the target pressure within the required amount of time, the system will advance to the next screen automatically.

**ENTER PURGE FLUID DATA**

1. Enter the purge fluid information. The screen in Figure 5.10 shows a table of recommended default values for the purge fluid.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Purge Fluid Volume</th>
<th>500 ml</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dextrose Concentration</td>
<td>5 %</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heparin Concentration</td>
<td>0 units / ml</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure 5.10  Entering Purge Fluid Information**

2. To select the default values displayed on the screen, press the **ACCEPT** soft button. This will select those values and automatically advance to the next screen. Note: the Automated Impella® Controller will remember the purge fluid value entered on the previous Case Start.

**Placement Lumen Flush Not Complete Error Screen**

This error screen will pop up after 60 seconds of inactivity on the Flush Placement Lumen screen. The design allows the user to manually flush the placement lumen so that case start can be completed with a risk of no position or suction detection, but will allow them to provide hemodynamic support in an emergent situation.
3. To change the purge fluid information, press the **EDIT** soft button, scroll to the appropriate item and push the selector knob to select it or use the white arrow soft keys. Then scroll through the values and push the selector knob or press **SELECT** to make a new selection. Press the **DONE** button to finish editing. The controller will use the default values if no other selections are made. See Figure 5.11.

- Purge fluid can be set to 50 mL, 100 mL, 250 mL, 500 mL (default), or 1000 mL.
- Dextrose concentration can be set to 5% (default), 10%, 20%, 30%, or 40%.
- Heparin concentration can be set to 0 (default), 5, 10, 12.5, 15, 20, 25, or 50 units/mL.

![Figure 5.11 Changing the Purge Fluid Information](image)

**SECURE THE PURGE TUBING**

1. To complete the setup, connect the purge tubing to the white connector cable by pushing the purge tubing into the clips attached to the white connector cable as shown in Figure 5.12.

![Figure 5.12 Connecting the Purge Tubing to the Connector Cable](image)

**IMPELLA® SYSTEM SET-UP CONFIGURATION**

Figure 5.13 illustrates the correct set-up configuration of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems (Impella CP® shown; Impella® 5.0 and LD configurations do not use the Y connector).
NOTE – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

**Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® Catheter. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.**

**Avoid manual compression of the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula assembly.**

**To prevent malfunction of the locking mechanism of the peel-away introducer, do NOT hold the hemostatic valve while inserting into the artery.**

**Do NOT kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do NOT kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.**

**Handle with care. The Impella® Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do NOT bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.**

**Patients with aortic stenosis or other abnormal aortic valve performance may be compromised by the use of the Impella® Catheter. Patients with aortic valve disease should be observed for aortic insufficiency.**

1. Confirm purge fluid is exiting the Impella® Catheter.
2. Obtain access to the femoral artery.
3. Insert a 5–8 Fr introducer over the 0.035 guidewire (provided) to pre-dilate the vessel.
4. Remove the 5–8 Fr introducer over the 0.035 guidewire. Predilate the artery with a 10 Fr dilator prior to inserting the 13 Fr peel-away introducer with dilator (see Figure 5.14). While inserting the introducer, hold the shaft of the introducer to slide it into the artery.

5. Administer heparin. When the ACT is greater than or equal to 250 seconds, remove the dilator.

6. Insert a diagnostic catheter (Abiomed recommends a 6 Fr AL1 or Multipurpose without side holes or 4–5 Fr pigtail with or without side holes) over a 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire into the introducer and advance it into the left ventricle.

7. Remove the 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire, leaving the diagnostic catheter in the ventricle. Form a curve or bend on the end of the 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire, following the instructions and heeding the precautions described in the sidebar box.

8. Advance the placement guidewire into the apex of the left ventricle.

9. Remove the diagnostic catheter.
To backload the catheter using the EasyGuide lumen

10. Insert the placement guidewire into the red EasyGuide lumen at the tip of the pigtail as shown in Figure 5.16. (If the catheter does not have a red EasyGuide lumen, follow the procedure outlined in step 11.)

   a. Advance the guidewire until it exits the red lumen near the label.

   b. Remove the EasyGuide lumen by gently pulling the label in line with the catheter shaft while holding the Impella® Catheter as shown in Figure 5.16.

   c. If you suspect that a portion of the red lumen remains in the catheter, do NOT use the Impella® Catheter. Measure red lumen length using catheter markings (intact length is between 21.5 cm and 22.5 cm).

   d. Skip to step 11 if the catheter is successfully backloaded on the guidewire.

Figure 5.16 Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire using the EasyGuide Lumen

To backload the catheter without the EasyGuide lumen

11. Wet the cannula with sterile water and backload the catheter onto the placement guidewire. One or two people can load the catheter on the guidewire.

One-person technique

   a. Advance the guidewire into the Impella® Catheter and stabilize the cannula between the fingers as shown in Figure 5.17. This prevents pinching of the inlet area. The guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula and align with the straight black line on the catheter as shown in Figure 5.17. The cannula can be hyperextended as necessary to ensure the guidewire exits on the inner radius of the cannula.

Two-person technique

   b. The scrub assistant can help stabilize the catheter by holding the catheter proximal to the motor. This will allow the implanting physician to visualize the inner radius. The guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula and align with the straight black line on the catheter, as shown in Figure 5.17. The physician can focus on advancing the guidewire and, if the cannula needs to be hyperextended, the scrub assistant is available to assist.
5.17 Loading the Catheter on the Guidewire without the EasyGuide Lumen and Aligning the Placement Guidewire

12. Advance the catheter through the hemostatic valve into the femoral artery (see Figure 5.18) and along the placement guidewire and across the aortic valve using a fixed-wire technique. Follow the catheter under fluoroscopy as it is advanced across the aortic valve, positioning the inlet area of the catheter 3.5 cm below the aortic valve annulus and in the middle of the ventricular chamber, free from the mitral valve chordae. Be careful not to coil the guidewire in the left ventricle.

13. Remove the placement guidewire.

14. Confirm position with fluoroscopy and confirm that an aortic waveform (see Figure 5.19) is displayed on the Automated Impella® Controller.

Take “Small Bites” During Insertion

While inserting the Impella® Catheter, push the catheter from only a few centimeters behind the hub of the peel-away introducer. This prevents the catheter from buckling during insertion.

Do NOT Touch Inlet or Outlet Areas

While feeding the Impella® Catheter through the introducer, hold the catheter at the cannula or motor housing. Do NOT touch the inlet or the outlet areas.

Maintaining ACT

After insertion of the catheter (and until explant), ACT should be maintained at 160 to 180 seconds.

To prevent device failure, do NOT start the Impella® Catheter until the guidewire has been removed.

Do NOT remove the Impella® Catheter over the length of the guidewire.
Anticoagulate before removing dilator. (Recommend ACT above 250 seconds)

Confirm purge fluid exits Impella Catheter.

Remove Guidewire before starting Impella.

Figure 5.19  Aortic Waveform on Final Case Start Screen
WIRELESS INSERTION OF THE IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER

OVERVIEW

Physicians should exercise special care when inserting the Impella® Catheter in patients with known or suspected unrepaired abdominal aortic aneurysm or significant descending thoracic aortic aneurysm or dissection of the ascending, transverse, or descending aorta.

Physicians have developed a wireless technique as an alternative to the standard insertion method for the Impella® 2.5 Catheter. This technique eliminates several of the steps in the traditional insertion method.

WIRELESS INSERTION TECHNIQUE

1. Place a 13 Fr introducer in the usual manner.
2. Administer heparin. When the ACT is above 250 seconds, remove the 13 Fr dilator.
3. Straighten the pigtail at the end of the Impella® 2.5 Catheter by hand and advance it through the hemostatic valve. Advance the catheter in small steps to avoid kinking.
4. Track the catheter through the descending aorta using fluoroscopy. Maintain the pigtail curve on the medial aspect of the aorta closer to the spine.
5. When the pigtail reaches the aortic valve, rest the pigtail against the medial cusp and continue to advance it until the catheter begins to prolapse.
6. Pull back while turning the catheter clockwise, allowing it to advance (“pop”) across the aortic valve.
7. If the catheter fails to advance across the valve, pull back, twist 45°, and repeat the process.

RECOMMENDATIONS FOR HANDLING THE IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER

During wireless insertion of the Impella® 2.5 Catheter, avoid twisting the catheter more than 360°. Doing so will tangle the connector cable and purge tubing. To reduce the likelihood of twisting or stressing the clear sidearm, ensure that the clear sidearm is clipped to the connector cable and is rotating with the red Impella plug. When in the initial set-up configuration, carefully inspect the catheter for kinking. In this configuration, occlusion alarms will not sound.

If the Impella® 2.5 Catheter must be removed from the patient, carefully rinse the catheter with heparinized saline solution to prevent blood from clotting on it when it is exposed to air. Use a new, clean basin to ensure the catheter will not come in contact with any loose fibers that could interfere with the operation of the motor.
IMPELLA CP® CATHETER INSERTION

NOTE – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® Catheter and during re-wire through the guidewire access port. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.

Avoid manual compression of the inlet and outlet areas of the cannula assembly.

To prevent malfunction of the locking mechanism of the peel-away introducer, do NOT hold the hemostatic valve while inserting into the artery.

Do NOT kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do NOT kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.

Handle with care. The Impella® Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do NOT bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.

1. Confirm purge fluid is exiting the Impella Catheter.
2. Obtain access to the femoral artery.
3. Insert a 5–8 Fr introducer over the 0.035 guidewire (provided) to pre-dilate the vessel.
4. Remove the 5–8 Fr introducer over the 0.035 guidewire. Sequentially insert and remove the 8 Fr, 10 Fr, and 12 Fr dilators and then insert the peel-away introducer with dilator (see Figure 5.20). While inserting the introducer, hold the shaft of the introducer to slide it into the artery.

Figure 5.20  Inserting the Peel-Away Introducer

Use Fluoroscopy for Placement

Impella® Catheter performance will be compromised if correct placement cannot be confirmed. While other imaging techniques, such as transesophageal echocardiography (TEE), portable C-Arm fluoroscopy, or chest x-ray can help confirm the position of the Impella® Catheter after placement, these methods do not allow visualization of the entire catheter assembly and are inadequate for reliably placing the Impella® Catheter across the aortic valve.

Introducer Setup

Refer to the instructions for use for each introducer for setup instructions.

When inserting the dilator, be sure to twist and lock it onto the hub of the sheath and twist it off when removing it from the sheath.

Keep ACT ≥250 Seconds

Achieving an ACT ≥ 250 seconds prior to removing the dilator will help prevent a thrombus from entering the catheter and causing a sudden stop on startup.
5. Administer heparin. When the ACT is greater than or equal to 250 seconds, remove the dilator.

6. Insert a diagnostic catheter (Abiomed recommends a 6 Fr AL1 or Multipurpose without side holes or 4–5 Fr pigtail with or without side holes) over a 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire into the introducer and advance it into the left ventricle.

7. Remove the 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire, leaving the diagnostic catheter in the ventricle. Form a curve or bend on the end of the 0.018 inch, 260 cm placement guidewire, following the instructions and heeding the precautions described in the sidebar box.

8. Advance the placement guidewire into the apex of the left ventricle.

9. Remove the diagnostic catheter.

To backload the catheter using the EasyGuide lumen

10. Insert the placement guidewire into the red EasyGuide lumen at the tip of the pigtail as shown in Figure 5.22. (If the red EasyGuide lumen has been removed, follow the procedure outlined in step 11.)

   a. Advance the guidewire until it exits the red lumen near the label.

   b. Remove the EasyGuide lumen by gently pulling the label in line with the catheter shaft while holding the Impella® Catheter as shown in Figure 5.22.

   c. If you suspect that a portion of the red lumen remains in the catheter, do NOT use the Impella® Catheter. Measure red lumen length using catheter markings (intact length is between 21.5 cm and 22.5 cm).

   d. Skip to step 11 if the catheter is successfully backloaded on the guidewire.

GP IIb-IIIa Inhibitors

If the patient is receiving a GP IIb-IIIa inhibitor, the dilator can be removed and the Impella® Catheter inserted when ACT is 200 or above.

Using a Pigtail Diagnostic Catheter with Side Holes

When using a pigtail diagnostic catheter with side holes, ensure that the guidewire exits the end of the catheter and not the side hole. To do so, magnify the area one to two times as the guidewire begins to exit the pigtail.

Shaping the 0.018” Placement Guidewire

Place the shaping tool just distal to the weld separating the shaping ribbon from the body of the placement guidewire. Bend the shaping ribbon against the tool, using minimal force. Do NOT use a shaping tool with a sharp tip or edge. Do NOT pull the shaping tool along the length of the shaping ribbon as this could strip the coil off the guidewire and cause it to unfurl and separate. Inspect the coil and guidewire for damage after shaping and before using.
To backload the catheter without the EasyGuide lumen

11. Wet the cannula with sterile water and backload the catheter onto the placement guidewire. One or two people can load the catheter on the guidewire.

One-person technique

a. Advance the guidewire into the Impella® Catheter and stabilize the cannula between the fingers as shown in Figure 5.23. This prevents pinching of the inlet area. The guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula and align with the straight black line on the catheter as shown in Figure 5.23. The cannula can be hyperextended as necessary to ensure the guidewire exits on the inner radius of the cannula.

Two-person technique

b. The scrub assistant can help stabilize the catheter by holding the catheter proximal to the motor. This will allow the implanting physician to visualize the inner radius. The guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula and align with the straight black line on the catheter, as shown in Figure 5.23. The physician can focus on advancing the guidewire and, if the cannula needs to be hyperextended, the scrub assistant is available to assist.

Do NOT reinsert the EasyGuide lumen

Once you remove the EasyGuide lumen from the Impella® Catheter, do not attempt to reinsert it. If necessary, follow instructions for backloading the catheter without the EasyGuide lumen.

Avoid Damaging Inlet Area

During placement of the Impella® Catheter, take care to avoid damage to the inlet area while holding the catheter and loading the placement guidewire.

Impella® Catheter Use in Open Heart Surgery

If the Impella® Catheter is used in the OR as part of open heart surgery, manipulation may be performed only at the access site. Direct manipulation of the catheter assembly through the aorta or ventricle may result in serious damage to the Impella® Catheter and serious injury to the patient.

Positioning in Small Hearts

If a patient has a smaller than normal ventricular cavity, the proper placement of the inlet area of the catheter may be 3 cm (rather than 3.5 cm) from the aortic valve.
12. Advance the catheter through the hemostatic valve into the femoral artery (see Figure 5.24) and along the placement guidewire and across the aortic valve using a fixed-wire technique. Follow the catheter under fluoroscopy as it is advanced across the aortic valve, positioning the inlet area of the catheter 3.5 cm below the aortic valve annulus and in the middle of the ventricular chamber, free from the mitral valve chordae. Be careful not to coil the guidewire in the left ventricle.

**Take “Small Bites” During Insertion**

While inserting the Impella® Catheter, push the catheter from only a few centimeters behind the hub of the peel-away introducer. This prevents the catheter from buckling during insertion.

**Do NOT Touch Inlet or Outlet Areas**

While feeding the Impella® Catheter through the introducer, hold the catheter at the cannula or motor housing. Do NOT touch the inlet or the outlet areas.

**Maintaining ACT**

After insertion of the catheter (and until explant), ACT should be maintained at 160 to 180 seconds.

13. Remove the placement guidewire.

14. Confirm position with fluoroscopy and confirm that an aortic waveform (see Figure 5.25) is displayed on the Automated Impella® Controller.
AXILLARY INSERTION OF THE IMPELLA® 2.5, 5.0, OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER

NOTE – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

Figure 5.25  Aortic Waveform on Final Case Start Screen
The introducer and graft lock are supplied sterile and can be used only if the packaging is not damaged and the expiration date has not elapsed.

Fluoroscopy is required for the insertion of the Impella® guidewire and Impella® 5.0 Catheter.

During insertion, avoid manual compression of the inlet or outlet areas of the Impella® Catheter or the sensor area of the cannula on the Impella® 5.0 Catheter.

The graft must be affixed to the introducer proximal to the retainers on the introducer sheath to prevent the introducer from sliding out of the graft.

When inserting the Impella® Catheter through the introducer and into the graft, be sure to clamp the graft with a vascular clamp just above the anastomosis to avoid blood loss through the pump cannula during insertion through the valve.

The Impella® Axillary Insertion kit is intended to be used for insertion only. To provide continued hemostasis, the introducer must be peeled away and the repositioning sheath inserted into the graft.

Do NOT resterilize or reuse any components of the Impella® Axillary Insertion kit. All components are disposable and intended for single use only. Reuse, reprocessing, or resterilization may compromise performance.

The Impella® Axillary Insertion kit is not designed for use with the Impella® LD Catheter.

The introducer is designed to be inserted into a graft. It is not intended for direct insertion into the artery.

Abiomed recommends the use of a 10 mm diameter Hemashield Platinum graft with the introducer for proper fit and hemostasis between the graft and the introducer. A smaller diameter graft will not fit over the introducer.

Abiomed recommends the use of a 20 cm length graft to allow enough length to fully insert the Impella® Catheter cannula into the graft prior to releasing vascular clamps at the anastomosis to minimize blood loss through the cannula.

Do NOT kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do NOT kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.

Proper positioning of the Impella® Catheter is extremely important and it is worthwhile to take extra time when positioning the catheter.

Take care to insert the guidewire with diagnostic catheter into the middle of the hemostatic valve of the introducer to avoid tearing the valve.

When inserting the Impella® Catheter into the introducer, take care to insert it straight into the center of the introducer valve.

The following steps describe the recommended technique for axillary artery insertion of the Impella® 2.5, 5.0, or Impella CP® Catheter.

1. Isolate and expose the axillary artery and obtain control via proximal and distal vessel loops.

2. Attach a 10 mm diameter x 20 cm long vascular graft to the axillary artery using a standard end-to-side anastomosis. NOTE: Abiomed recommends using a Hemashield Platinum graft and recommends using at least a 60 degree bevel on the end of the graft to facilitate passage of the rigid motor housing into the artery.
3. Clamp the graft with a vascular clamp just above the anastomosis and loosen the vessel loops to allow blood to flow into the graft to assess for hemostasis at the anastomosis.

4. Insert the introducer into the graft and secure it with one (1) provided graft lock. To place the graft lock, open it and place it between the retainers and the hub on the introducer to prevent the introducer from sliding out of the graft (see Figure 5.26). NOTE: If a graft other than the Hemashield Platinum is used, 2 graft locks may be required to maintain hemostasis between the graft and the introducer. Correct positioning of the second graft is illustrated in Figure 5.27).

5. Secure the graft lock by pressing both the outside tabs together. When fully closed, the graft lock provides hemostasis. If hemostasis is not achieved, make sure to press the two tabs together to fully close the graft lock as shown in Figure 5.28. The graft lock cannot be damaged by over closing. NOTE: The graft may also be secured over the introducer using heavy sutures or umbilical tape.
6. Remove the vascular clamp on the graft and insert a 0.035 inch diagnostic guidewire with a 4–6 Fr diagnostic catheter into the introducer, taking care to center the wire and catheter in the center of the hemostatic valve. Advance the guidewire and catheter into the left ventricle.

7. Remove the diagnostic guidewire and exchange it for a stiff 0.018 inch placement guidewire. With the 0.018 inch placement guidewire properly positioned in the left ventricle, remove the diagnostic catheter.

8. Remove the protective sleeve on the provided 8 Fr silicone-coated lubrication dilator, being careful to avoid getting silicone on your hands. Insert the dilator into the introducer over the 0.018 inch placement guidewire to coat the hemostatic valve with silicone oil to facilitate insertion of the Impella® Catheter through the hemostatic valve assembly. Once fully inserted, remove the dilator, keeping the 0.018 inch placement guidewire in place.

9. Clamp the graft with a vascular clamp just above the anastomosis to avoid blood loss through the pump cannula during insertion through the valve.

10. While maintaining guidewire position, backload the Impella® Catheter onto the 0.018 inch placement guidewire and advance the catheter over the guidewire through the introducer into the graft such that the entire pump cannula and motor housing resides in the graft and only the catheter shaft is seen exiting the valve.
11. Remove the vascular clamp and continue inserting the Impella® Catheter into the aorta. If inserting an Impella® 5.0 Catheter, pause to re-zero the pressure sensor (as described in section 6 of this manual) while the catheter is in the aorta. Continue advancing across the aortic valve using fluoroscopic imaging to properly position the inlet area in the left ventricle no more than 3.5 cm below the aortic valve. Remove the placement guidewire and initiate Impella® Catheter support as described later in this section.

12. Clamp the graft adjacent to the axillary artery with a soft jawed vascular clamp or have an assistant apply digital pressure to control bleeding at the base of the graft so that the introducer can be removed and the graft shortened. NOTE: To ensure the soft jaw vascular clamp is completely sealing over the graft and the 9 Fr catheter, open the sidearm flush valve on the introducer and verify blood is not leaking from the system.

13. To remove the introducer, release the graft lock by pressing the two adjacent long tabs together as shown in Figure 5.29 and remove it from the graft.

![Figure 5.29 Releasing the Graft Lock](image.png)

14. Slide the introducer fully out of the graft prior to peeling it away. To peel the introducer off the catheter shaft, crack the hub by applying pressure to the thumb tabs and then peel the sheath off the catheter. NOTE: When breaking the hemostatic valve in the sheath hub, the valve may stretch before separating.

15. Trim any excess graft and slide the repositioning sheath into the graft. NOTE: The hub of the repositioning sheath should be at the skin level and the length of the remaining graft material should be just long enough to secure the graft around the repositioning sheath with all of the graft buried beneath the skin.

16. Using heavy silk suture, secure the graft around the hub of the repositioning sheath so that the position of the Impella® Catheter can still be adjusted. Remove the vascular clamp adjacent to the axillary artery.

17. The wound should be closed over the trimmed graft with the end of the repositioning sheath clearly visible. Anchor the repositioning sheath securely to the skin.

18. Remove excess slack from the Impella® Catheter and re-check position. Tighten the Tuohy-Borst valve to prevent catheter migration.

19. Extend the sterile sleeve. Attach one end to the repositioning hub and anchor the other to the catheter.
Use Fluoroscopy for Placement

Impella® 5.0 Catheter performance will be compromised if correct placement cannot be confirmed. While other imaging techniques, such as transesophageal echocardiography (TEE), can help confirm the position of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter after placement, TEE does not allow visualization of the entire catheter assembly and is inadequate for reliably placing the Impella® 5.0 Catheter across the aortic valve.

ALTERNATE INSERTION TECHNIQUE FOR THE IMPELLA® 5.0 CATHETER

NOTE – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

Fluoroscopy is required to guide placement of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter. The small placement guidewire must be reliably observed at all times.

Avoid manual compression of the inlet, outlet, or sensor areas of the cannula assembly.

Do NOT kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do NOT kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.

Handle with care. The Impella® 5.0 Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do NOT bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.

This section describes two alternative techniques for insertion of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter:

- Femoral insertion
- Femoral insertion with sidearm graft

TECHNIQUE FOR FEMORAL ARTERY INSERTION

1. Identify the femoral artery and perform a cut-down of 3 to 5 cm.

2. Expose the femoral artery. Wrap vessel loops, one distal and one proximal to the subsequent point of incision, one and a half times around the artery. Make the vessel loops as far apart as possible (see Figure 5.30).

Figure 5.30  Cut-Down Insertion of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter

Use Fluoroscopy for Placement
To prepare the repositioning sheath, remove the luer plug at the end of the sidearm tube and flush the tube with 0.9% NaCl solution.

Place the luer plug back in the sidearm tube and secure the plug.

Make the incision as close as possible to the distal loop. Insert a diagnostic catheter (Abiomed recommends a 6 Fr AL1 or Multipurpose without side holes or 4–5 Fr pigtail with or without side holes) over a diagnostic 0.035 inch or 0.038 inch guidewire into the left ventricle.

Remove the diagnostic guidewire and exchange it for the supplied 0.018 inch placement guidewire.

Hold tension on the proximal vessel loop to prevent bleeding. Straighten the blue pigtail and thread it over the 0.018 inch placement guidewire (see Figure 5.31). Wet the cannula with sterile water and backload the catheter onto the placement guidewire. One or two people can load the catheter on the guidewire.

Advance the placement guidewire into the Impella® 5.0 Catheter and stabilize the cannula between the fingers. This prevents pinching of the inlet area. The placement guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the cannula as shown in Figure 5.31, and align with the straight black line on the catheter. The catheter can be hyperextended as necessary to ensure the placement guidewire exits on the inner radius of the cannula.

The scrub assistant can help stabilize the catheter by holding the catheter proximal to the motor. This will allow the implanting physician to visualize the inner radius. The placement guidewire must exit the outlet area on the inner radius of the catheter and align with the straight black line on the catheter. The physician can focus on advancing the placement guidewire and, if the cannula needs to be hyperextended, the scrub assistant is available to assist.

Make a transverse incision at the guidewire for the 21 Fr catheter. Use U-stitches (see Figure 5.30) instead of purse string sutures to avoid stenosis of the vessel after explantation.

Administer heparin and achieve ACT of at least 250 seconds.

Insert the catheter into the vessel and advance along the 0.018 inch placement guidewire until resistance is met at the proximal vessel loop.

If the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is used in the OR as part of open heart surgery, manipulation may be performed only through the 9 Fr steering catheter. Direct manipulation of the catheter through the aorta or ventricle may result in serious damage to the Impella® 5.0 Catheter and serious injury to the patient.

When using a pigtail diagnostic catheter with side holes, ensure that the guidewire exits the end of the catheter and not the side hole. To do so, magnify the area one to two times as the guidewire begins to exit the pigtail.

If the patient is receiving a GP IIb-IIIa inhibitor, the Impella® 5.0 Catheter can be inserted when ACT is 200 or above.
10. Loosen the proximal vessel loop and advance the catheter into the vessel. When the motor housing is entirely past the proximal vessel loop, temporarily tighten the loop to control bleeding.

![Warning]
To prevent device failure, do not start the Impella® 5.0 Catheter until the placement guidewire has been removed.

![Warning]
Do NOT remove the Impella® 5.0 Catheter over the length of the placement guidewire.

11. Advance the repositioning sheath, located on the catheter shaft, through the incision and into the femoral artery until bleeding is controlled. Secure the sheath outside of the vessel using the supplied suture loop.

12. Stabilize the guidewire and repositioning sheath and advance the catheter through the sheath. Follow the catheter under fluoroscopy as it is advanced into the left ventricle. (Refer to the following page and to section 7 of this manual for information about waveforms displayed on the controller during placement.)

13. When the catheter is correctly positioned, slightly loosen the proximal vessel loop and remove the 0.018 inch guidewire. Leave at least 2 to 3 cm of the repositioning sheath inside the vessel.

14. Tighten the prepared U-stitches to seal the sheath.

15. Loosen the distal vessel loop. Then loosen the proximal vessel loop.

**INSERTION TECHNIQUE USING A SIDEARM GRAFT**

1. After exposing the femoral artery and making the incision as described in the steps above, prepare a Dacron® vascular graft (10 mm x 20 cm) by beveling the end of the graft at a 45 to 60 degree angle.

2. Tighten the distal and proximal vessel loops to control bleeding.

3. Attach the vascular graft using the standard end-to-side anastomosis (Figure 5.32).
4. Assess the anastomosis for hemostasis.

5. Attach a standard 6 Fr introducer to the distal end of the graft.

6. Advance a diagnostic catheter (Abiomed recommends a 6 Fr AL1 or Multipurpose without side holes or 4–5 Fr pigtail with or without side holes) over a diagnostic 0.035 inch or 0.038 inch guidewire into the left ventricle.

7. Remove the diagnostic guidewire and exchange it for the supplied 0.018 inch placement guidewire.

8. Tighten the vessel loops to control bleeding and remove the 6 Fr introducer.

9. Moisten the Impella® 5.0 Catheter and push one of the silicone plugs onto the catheter shaft adjacent to the Impella® 5.0 Catheter motor.

10. Backload the Impella® 5.0 Catheter onto the 0.018 inch guidewire (as described in the steps in previous section).

11. With the graft held at the base, place the Impella® 5.0 Catheter into the open end of the graft up to the level of the silicone plug.

12. Secure umbilical tape around the silicone plug.

13. Loosen both vessel loops and advance the Impella® 5.0 Catheter along the guidewire into the left ventricle until it is properly positioned.

14. Remove the guidewire.

15. Apply digital pressure to control bleeding at the base of the graft and remove the silicone plug.

16. Trim any excess graft and slide the repositioning sheath into position.

To prevent device failure, do not start the Impella® 5.0 Catheter until the placement guidewire has been removed.

Do NOT remove the Impella® 5.0 Catheter over the length of the placement guidewire.

Figure 5.32  Femoral Artery Insertion of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter Using a Sidearm Graft
17. Using a heavy silk tie or umbilical tape, secure the graft around the yellow hub of the repositioning sheath.

18. Close the wound over the trimmed graft with the end of the repositioning sheath clearly visible. The steering catheter for the Impella® 5.0 can be manipulated if needed by securing the repositioning sheath and moving the catheter in or out.

19. Extend the sterile sleeve. Attach one end to the repositioning hub and anchor the other to the catheter.

**IMPLANTING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER**

**NOTE** – Proper surgical procedures and techniques are the responsibility of the medical professional. The described procedure is furnished for information purposes only. Each physician must evaluate the appropriateness of the procedure based on his or her medical training and experience, the type of procedure, and the type of systems used.

- Avoid manual compression of the inlet, outlet, or sensor areas of the cannula assembly.
- Do NOT kink or clamp the Impella® Catheter with anything other than a soft jaw vascular clamp. Do NOT kink or clamp the peel-away introducer.
- Handle with care. The Impella® LD Catheter can be damaged during removal from packaging, preparation, insertion, and removal. Do NOT bend, pull, or place excess pressure on the catheter or mechanical components at any time.
- An incision larger than 6 mm may allow the front plug to advance into the aorta.

The Impella® LD Catheter is surgically implanted when there is access to the ascending aorta through a sternotomy or thoracotomy. Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE) is required to guide placement.

**IMPLANTATION PREPARATION**

1. Using the supplied sterile incision template for positioning (see sidebar), place a sidebiter clamp on the aorta at least 7 cm above the valve plane.

2. Make an incision (or punch) no larger than 6 mm at the insertion site on the ascending aorta.

3. Attach the Dacron® vascular graft (10 mm x 15 cm) to the aorta using the standard end-to-side anastomosis.

4. Administer heparin and achieve ACT of at least 250 seconds.
5. When the anastomosis is complete, place a clamp at the distal end of the graft and then release the proximal clamp at the base of the graft. Examine the suture line for leaks and reclamp the graft at the base.

6. Moisten the Impella® LD Catheter and push both silicone plugs up against the motor housing as shown in Figure 5.33.

![Impella LD Catheter with Silicone Plugs](image)

**Figure 5.33 Impella® LD Catheter with Silicone Plugs**

7. Confirm purge fluid is exiting the Impella® LD Catheter.

8. With the graft clamped at the base, place the Impella® LD Catheter into the open end of the graft up to the level of the rear plug.

9. When the catheter is in position, secure a tourniquet around the rear silicone plug. Tighten the tourniquet sufficiently to control bleeding around the rear plug while still allowing the catheter to slide through the plug.

10. Release the clamp and advance the Impella® LD Catheter into the aorta.

11. If the patient is on cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB), allow the heart to fill by restricting the return flow to the bypass machine and reducing CPB flow to a minimum setting, as long as acceptable physiologic systemic flow is maintained.

12. As soon as the motor housing has passed into the aorta, use a ligature to loosely secure the front silicone plug flush to the graft. The silicone plug should be in the most proximal portion of the graft.

13. While the catheter is being advanced in the aorta, the initial placement signal has the characteristics shown in Figure 5.34. The inlet area of the catheter has not passed the aortic valve. Do not allow the front plug to advance beyond the base of the graft.
14. To aid in passing the catheter through the aortic valve, apply slight pressure to the posterior aspect of the aortic valve to produce temporary aortic insufficiency.

15. Gently advance the catheter forward until a pulsatile waveform is present on the placement screen (see Figure 5.35) This signal is generated when the inlet area of the catheter crosses the aortic valve.

16. Confirm that the controller displays a pulsatile waveform and the tip of the inlet area of the Impella® LD Catheter is 3.5 cm below the aortic valve. Confirm catheter position using TEE.
POSITIONING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP® CATHETERS

Retrograde flow will occur across the aortic valve if the flow rate of the Impella® Catheter is less than 0.5 L/min.

1. Place the catheter plug at the same level as the patient’s heart.

2. Reconfirm that the placement guidewire has been removed. Also reconfirm that the controller displays an aortic waveform and the radiopaque marker band is located at the aortic valve. (See step 7 if the controller displays a ventricular waveform.)

3. Press the START IMPELLA soft button. The Impella® CP or Impella® 2.5 will start in AUTO and automatically increase the flow rate over 30 seconds.

4. Once the controller has begun to run in AUTO, pressing the FLOW CONTROL soft button again opens the FLOW CONTROL menu with options for BOOST, AUTO, and P-levels ranging from P-0 to P-8 as shown in Figure 5.37 and described in the “Modes of Operation” discussion that follows.

**BOOST**

The “BOOST” FLOW CONTROL setting maximizes the Impella® Catheter flow for 5 minutes. At the end of 5 minutes, the controller returns to the AUTO setting (or P-8 if previously running in P-level mode).

**Figure 5.36**  Starting the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheter

**Figure 5.37**  FLOW CONTROL Options for the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheter
5. Wait 30 seconds for flow to reach its maximum value, then confirm correct and stable placement. Evaluate the catheter position in the aortic arch and remove any excess slack. The catheter should align against the lesser curvature of the aorta rather than the greater curvature. Verify placement with fluoroscopy and with the placement signal screen.

6. Reposition the catheter as necessary.

7. If the Impella® Catheter advances too far into the left ventricle and the controller displays a ventricular waveform (see Figure 5.38) rather than an aortic waveform, follow these steps to reposition the catheter.
   a. Pull the catheter back until an aortic waveform is present on the placement screen.
   b. When the aortic waveform is present, pull the catheter back an additional 4 cm. (The distance between adjacent markings on the catheter is 1 cm.) The catheter should now be positioned correctly.

Importance of Proper Impella® Catheter Placement

When the Impella® Catheter is not correctly placed, there is no effective unloading of the ventricle. The patient may not be benefiting from the flow rate shown on the controller.

Placement Monitoring Suspended

When the Impella® Catheter is operating in a low flow range, placement monitoring may be suspended and the flow rate in the lower left corner of the controller display screen will turn yellow to indicate that Impella position is unknown.

Retrograde Flow

If the Impella® Catheter minimum flow is below 0.1 L/min then the controller will increase the motor speed to prevent retrograde flow.

MODES OF OPERATION

AUTO

In AUTO, the Automated Impella® Controller sets the motor speed of the Impella® Catheter to achieve the maximum possible flow without causing suction. After 3 hours of operation, if you have not transferred to the standard configuration, the controller automatically switches to P-level mode. Upon transfer from AUTO mode to P-level mode, the controller displays the message shown in Figure 5.39 and the AUTO setting is no longer an option.
**BOOST**

If you select **BOOST**, the Automated Impella® Controller maximizes the Impella® Catheter flow for 5 minutes. At the end of 5 minutes, the controller returns to the AUTO setting (or P-8 if previously running in P-level mode).

**P-LEVEL**

In **P-LEVEL** mode you can select one of nine P-levels (P-0 to P-8) for the Impella® Catheter (see Table 5.3 for the Impella® 2.5 and Table 5.4 for the Impella CP®). Select the lowest P-level (P-2 or higher) that will enable you to achieve the flow rate necessary for patient support.

**Table 5.3  P-level Flow Rates for the Impella® 2.5 Catheter**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P-level</th>
<th>*Flow Rate (L/min)</th>
<th>Revolutions Per Minute (rpm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P-0</td>
<td>Impella® 2.5 Catheter motor is stopped</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-1</td>
<td>Flow rate increases as the P-level increases</td>
<td>0.0 – 1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-2</td>
<td>0.8 – 1.5</td>
<td>35,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-3</td>
<td>1.1 – 1.7</td>
<td>38,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-4</td>
<td>1.3 – 1.8</td>
<td>40,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-5</td>
<td>1.5 – 1.9</td>
<td>43,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-6</td>
<td>1.7 – 2.1</td>
<td>45,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-7</td>
<td>1.8 – 2.2</td>
<td>47,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-8</td>
<td>Recommended maximum P-level for continuous use</td>
<td>2.1 – 2.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOST</td>
<td>Used to confirm stable position after placement; can be used to provide maximum flow for up to 5 minutes. After 5 minutes, the Automated Impella® Controller will automatically default to AUTO or P-8.</td>
<td>2.1 – 2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Flow rate can vary due to suction or incorrect positioning.

**Table 5.4  P-level Flow Rates for the Impella CP® Catheter**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P-level</th>
<th>*Flow Rate (L/min)</th>
<th>Revolutions Per Minute (rpm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P-0</td>
<td>Impella CP® Catheter motor is stopped</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-1</td>
<td>Flow rate increases as the P-level increases</td>
<td>0.0 – 1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-2</td>
<td>1.0 – 2.1</td>
<td>31,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-3</td>
<td>1.7 – 2.3</td>
<td>33,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-4</td>
<td>2.0 – 2.5</td>
<td>35,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-5</td>
<td>2.3 – 2.7</td>
<td>37,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-6</td>
<td>2.5 – 2.9</td>
<td>39,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-7</td>
<td>2.8 – 3.2</td>
<td>42,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-8</td>
<td>Recommended maximum P-level for continuous use</td>
<td>3.0 – 3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BOOST</td>
<td>Used to confirm stable position after placement; can be used to provide maximum flow for up to 5 minutes. After 5 minutes, the Automated Impella® Controller will automatically default to AUTO or P-8.</td>
<td>3.3 – 3.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Flow rate can vary due to suction or incorrect positioning.
To operate the Impella® Catheter in P-level mode:

1. Press the FLOW CONTROL soft button to open the FLOW CONTROL menu.
2. Turn the selector knob to increase or decrease the flow rate.
3. Press the selector knob to select the new flow rate.

![Figure 5.40 Adjusting P-level](image)

**USE OF THE REPOSITIONING SHEATH AND PEEL-AWAY INTRODUCER**

- To prevent failure of the peel-away introducer, remove the peel-away introducer prior to transport when activated clotting time (ACT) is less than 150 seconds.
- Be sure that the stopcock on the peel-away introducer or repositioning sheath is always kept in the closed position. Significant bleed back can result if the stopcock is open.

1. Flush the sidearm of the repositioning sheath located on the catheter shaft.
2. **Remove the peel-away introducer completely from the artery** over the catheter shaft to prevent trauma and significant bleeding and apply manual pressure above the puncture site.
3. Grasp the two “wings” and bend back until the valve assembly comes apart. Continue to peel the two wings until the introducer is completely separated from the catheter shaft (see Figure 5.41).
To operate the Impella® Catheter in P-level mode:

1. Press the FLOW CONTROL soft button to open the FLOW CONTROL menu.
2. Turn the selector knob to increase or decrease the flow rate.
3. Press the selector knob to select the new flow rate.

**Motor Current**
- 808/684 (737) mA

**Placement Signal**
- 109/80 (93) mmHg

**Figure 5.40** Adjusting P-level

**USE OF THE REPOSITIONING SHEATH AND PEEL-AWAY INTRODUCER**

To prevent failure of the peel-away introducer, remove the peel-away introducer prior to transport when activated clotting time (ACT) is less than 150 seconds. Be sure that the stopcock on the peel-away introducer or repositioning sheath is always kept in the closed position. Significant bleed back can result if the stopcock is open.

1. Flush the sidearm of the repositioning sheath located on the catheter shaft.
2. Remove the peel-away introducer completely from the artery over the catheter shaft to prevent trauma and significant bleeding and apply manual pressure above the puncture site.
3. Grasp the two “wings” and bend back until the valve assembly comes apart. Continue to peel the two wings until the introducer is completely separated from the catheter shaft (see Figure 5.41).

**Maintaining ACT**

After insertion of the catheter (and until explant), ACT should be maintained at 160 to 180 seconds.

4. Flush the sidearm of the repositioning sheath prior to advancing the sheath.
5. For the Impella® 2.5 Catheter, place a deadend cap on the sidearm of the repositioning sheath to prevent further usage. The sideport should not be used to give medication or draw blood because the blood could potentially clot. Pressure bags should not be connected to the sideport of the repositioning sheath. If a pressure bag is connected, the sideport must have an infusion pump or flow limiting valve in place to control the amount of fluid administered to the patient.

**Addition of Heparin to the Purge Solution**

As soon as practical after catheter placement, change the purge fluid to include heparin. The recommended heparin concentration is 50 IU/mL in 5% dextrose solution. (Follow the Change Purge Fluid procedure described later in this section to change the purge fluid.)
6. Slide the repositioning sheath over the catheter shaft and advance it into the artery to the blue suture pads. For the Impella CP® Catheter, do NOT remove the stylet in the guidewire access port.

7. Secure the repositioning unit to the patient with the blue suture pads or a StatLock® stabilization device.

8. Evaluate the catheter position in the aortic arch and remove any excess slack. The catheter should align against the lesser curvature of the aorta rather than the greater curvature. Verify placement with fluoroscopy and with the placement signal.

9. Attach the anticontamination sleeve to the blue section of the repositioning sheath. Lock the anchoring ring in place by turning it clockwise. Secure the catheter shaft in place by tightening the connected anchoring ring.

10. Carefully extend the anticontamination sleeve to maximum length and secure the end closest to the red Impella® plug by tightening the anchoring ring.

**TRANSFER TO STANDARD CONFIGURATION**

Abiomed recommends transitioning from the initial set-up configuration to the standard configuration as soon as practical. The standard configuration ensures that purge solution is delivered through the catheter to prevent blood from entering the motor. After 2 hours of operation, if the system is still in the set-up configuration, a white, advisory alarm notifies the operator to transfer to the standard configuration. Press MUTE ALARM to silence the alarm for 30 minutes.

To transfer to the standard configuration, follow these steps.

1. Press PURGE SYSTEM and select “Transfer to Standard Configuration” from the menu.

2. Set up a standard sodium chloride solution with pressure bag (pressurized to 300–350 mmHg) using straight tubing without injection ports.

3. Clamp the red luer on the Y connector from the red pressure sidearm. Disconnect and end cap the red luer.

4. Create a slow drip from the NaCl pressure bag to flood the luer connector of the red pressure sidearm and make a wet-to-wet connection. Fully open the roller clamp. The controller may alarm during this step.

5. Select OK to confirm the transfer. You will no longer see the set-up icon on the bottom of the screen. The advisory alarm message will be gray.

Figure 5.42 illustrates the correct configuration of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems components after transitioning to the standard configuration from the set-up configuration.

---

**Purge Pressure**

When you transfer to the standard configuration, the purge pressure is no longer regulated at 600 mmHg. In the standard configuration, purge flow can range from 2 to 30 mL/hr and purge pressure can range from 300 to 1100 mmHg.

**Handling Precaution**

When connecting or disconnecting the red luer on the Y connector, do NOT grasp the white flush valve or apply force. Grasp the luer on both sides beneath the white flush valve while connecting or disconnecting lines from the red pressure sidearm.
POSITIONING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® 5.0 CATHETER

! Retrograde flow will occur across the aortic valve if the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is set at P-0.

1. Confirm purge fluid is exiting the Impella Catheter.
2. While the catheter is being advanced in the aorta, the initial placement signal has the characteristics shown in Figure 5.43. The inlet area of the catheter has not passed the aortic valve.

Disconnecting the Y Connector

When you switch to the standard configuration, you can simply clamp, disconnect, and cap the red luer on the Y connector (as shown in Figure 5.25) or you can disconnect the Y connector entirely and connect the yellow luer on the purge tubing directly to the yellow check valve on the Impella® Catheter.

Importance of Proper Impella® 5.0 Catheter Placement

When the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is not correctly placed, there is no effective unloading of the ventricle (hydraulic short circuit). The patient may not be benefiting from the flow rate shown on the controller.
Addition of Heparin to the Purge Solution

As soon as practical after placement, change the purge fluid to include heparin. The recommended heparin concentration is 50 IU/mL in 20% dextrose solution. (Follow the Change Purge Fluid procedure described later in this section to change the purge fluid.)

Figure 5.43 Waveform as Catheter is Advanced into the Aorta

3. Gently advance the catheter forward until a pulsatile waveform is present on the placement signal screen (see Figure 5.44). This signal is generated when the inlet area of the catheter crosses the aortic valve.
4. Confirm that the controller displays a pulsatile waveform and the inlet area of the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is 3.5 cm below the aortic valve.

![Pulsatile Waveform on Placement Screen](image)

**Figure 5.44  Pulsatile Waveform on Placement Screen**

5. Press the **START IMPELLA** soft button.

6. Press the **FLOW CONTROL** soft button to open the P-level menu (see Figure 5.45).

7. Turn the selector knob to increase the P-level from P-0 to P-2.

8. Press the selector knob to select the new P-level.

![Selecting P-level](image)

**Figure 5.45  Selecting P-level**

9. The catheter operation icon in the lower left corner of the screen begins rotating when the Impella® 5.0 Catheter beings to operate.

---

**Positioning in Small Hearts**

If a patient has a smaller than normal ventricular cavity, the proper placement of the inlet area of the catheter may be 3 cm (rather than 3.5 cm) from the aortic valve.

**Check Positioning at P-9**

When the P-level is increased to P-9, the Impella® 5.0 Catheter has a tendency to be drawn into the ventricle. Check positioning at P-9 to ensure proper placement throughout the P-level setting range.
10. Increase the P-level to P-9 to confirm correct and stable placement. Evaluate the catheter position in the aortic arch and remove any excess slack. The catheter should align against the lesser curvature of the aorta rather than the greater curvature. Verify placement with fluoroscopy and with the placement screen (see Figure 5.46).

11. Make sure there is no bleeding at the transition from the repositioning sheath to the artery. Close and dress the wound. Secure the repositioning sheath to the patient with the blue suture pads or a StatLock® device.

12. Attach the anticontamination sleeve to the sheath. Lock it in place by turning clockwise. Secure the catheter by tightening the connected anchoring ring.

13. Carefully extend the anticontamination sleeve to maximum length and secure the end closest to the red Impella® plug by tightening the anchoring ring.

14. Reposition the catheter as necessary.

15. Select the lowest P-level that will enable you to achieve the flow rate necessary for patient support. You can select one of ten P-levels (P-0 to P-9) for the Impella® 5.0 Catheter (see Table 5.5).

**Addition of Heparin to the Purge Solution**

As soon as practical after placement, change the purge fluid to include heparin. The recommended heparin concentration is 50 IU/mL in 5% dextrose solution. (Follow the Change Purge Fluid procedure described later in this section to change the purge fluid.)

**Vascular Closure**

When securing the repositioning sheath, vascular closure may be difficult in obese patients with extensive adipose tissue.

**Retrograde Flow**

A setting of P-0 will result in retrograde flow when the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is placed across the aortic valve. Retrograde flow may also occur at P-1.

**Placement Monitoring Suspended**

When the Impella® Catheter is operating in a low flow range, placement monitoring may be suspended and the flow rate in the lower left corner of the controller display screen will turn yellow to indicate that Impella® position is unknown.
Table 5.5  P-Level Flow Rates for the Impella® 5.0 Catheter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P-Level</th>
<th>*Flow Rate (L/min)</th>
<th>Revolutions Per Minute (rpm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P-0</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-1</td>
<td>0.0 – 1.4</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-2</td>
<td>0.5 – 2.6</td>
<td>17,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-3</td>
<td>0.5 – 3.1</td>
<td>20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-4</td>
<td>0.9 – 3.4</td>
<td>22,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-5</td>
<td>1.4 – 3.7</td>
<td>24,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-6</td>
<td>1.8 – 4.0</td>
<td>26,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-7</td>
<td>2.6 – 4.4</td>
<td>28,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-8</td>
<td>3.4 – 4.7</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-9</td>
<td>4.2 – 5.3</td>
<td>33,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Flow rate can vary due to suction or incorrect positioning.

POSITIONING AND STARTING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER

**Retrograde flow** will occur across the aortic valve if the Impella® LD Catheter is set at P-0.

1. Press the **START IMPELLA** soft button.
2. Press the **FLOW CONTROL** soft button to open the P-level menu (see Figure 5.47).
3. Turn the selector knob to increase the P-level from P-0 to P-2.
4. Press the selector knob to select the new P-level.
Check Positioning at Maximum Flow

When the flow rate is increased to maximum flow, the Impella® LD Catheter has a tendency to be drawn into the ventricle. Check positioning at maximum flow to ensure proper placement throughout the P-level setting range.

Addition of Heparin to the Purge Solution

As soon as practical after placement, change the purge fluid to include heparin. The recommended heparin concentration is 50 IU/mL in 5% dextrose solution. (Follow the Change Purge Fluid procedure described later in this section to change the purge fluid.)

5. The catheter operation icon in the lower left corner of the screen begins rotating when the Impella® LD Catheter begins to operate.

6. Increase P-level to P-9 to confirm correct and stable placement. Verify placement with TEE and the placement screen (see Figure 5.48). Reposition the catheter as necessary.

7. Position the front silicone plug as close as possible above the aorta. Secure the silicone plug to the graft using a penetrating suture ligature as shown in Figure 5.49.
8. Clear the vascular graft of excess blood and resecure the rear silicone plug to the end of the graft.

9. After achieving correct and stable placement, decrease the P-level to the desired level for support.

10. Select the lowest P-level that will enable you to achieve the flow rate necessary for patient support. You can select one of ten P-levels (P-0 to P-9) for the Impella® LD Catheter (see Table 5.6).

**Suture Depth**

When securing the silicone plug to the graft, ensure that the penetrating suture does NOT go all the way through the silicone plug and damage the Impella® LD Catheter inside the plug.

**Cardiopulmonary Bypass and Low Pulsatility**

Low pulsatility may lead to catheter position unknown alarms in conjunction with CPB.

**Maintaining ACT**

After implantation of the catheter (and until explant), ACT should be maintained at 160 to 180 seconds.
Table 5.6 P-Level Flow Rates for the Impella® LD Catheter

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>P-Level</th>
<th>*Flow Rate (L/min)</th>
<th>Revolutions Per Minute (rpm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>P-0</td>
<td>0.0 – 0.0</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-1</td>
<td>0.0 – 1.4</td>
<td>10,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-2</td>
<td>0.5 – 2.6</td>
<td>17,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-3</td>
<td>0.5 – 3.1</td>
<td>20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-4</td>
<td>0.9 – 3.4</td>
<td>22,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-5</td>
<td>1.4 – 3.7</td>
<td>24,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-6</td>
<td>1.8 – 4.0</td>
<td>26,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-7</td>
<td>2.6 – 4.4</td>
<td>28,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-8</td>
<td>3.4 – 4.7</td>
<td>30,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-9</td>
<td>4.2 – 5.3</td>
<td>33,000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Flow rate can vary due to suction or incorrect positioning.

**Purge Cassette Procedures**

When replacing the purge cassette, the replacement process must be completed within 2 minutes. The Impella® Catheter may be damaged if replacement takes longer than 2 minutes.

There are five procedures for maintaining the Impella® Catheter purge system:

- Change purge system (changing cassette and purge fluid)
- Change purge fluid
- Change purge cassette
- De-air purge system
- Transfer to standard configuration

Each procedure can be accessed using the PURGE SYSTEM soft button. Transferring to the standard configuration was discussed above. The other four purge cassette procedures are discussed below.

**Change Purge System**

Purge cassette change out may be required if extended use of the Impella® Catheter and purge cassette is required. Follow these steps to change both the purge cassette and purge fluid:

1. Press PURGE SYSTEM and select “Change Purge System” from the menu.
2. Open the purge cassette package. If the system is in the standard configuration, disconnect the Y connector from the purge cassette tubing as shown in Figure 5.50.
3. Spike the new fluid bag/bottle.
4. Select **OK** to deliver a bolus to the pressure reservoir so that the reservoir can maintain purge pressure during the change. A progress bar shows the progress of the bolus. After the bolus is delivered, the controller automatically proceeds to the next screen.
5. Disconnect the luer(s) from the Impella® Catheter and remove the used purge cassette.
6. Insert the new purge cassette into the controller. Be sure to slide the purge disc into place and extend the purge tubing through the gap in the purge cassette door when you close the door.
7. The system automatically primes the purge cassette. A progress bar shows the progress of the priming. Once the priming is complete, you are prompted to connect the purge tubing to the Impella® Catheter.
8. Connect the luer(s) on the end of the purge tubing to the luer(s) on the Impella® Catheter.
9. Purge system change is complete. Enter the purge fluid information and select **OK**.
   a. To select the default purge fluid values displayed on the screen, scroll to and select **OK**. This will select those values and automatically advance to the next screen.
   b. To change the purge fluid information, scroll to the appropriate item and push the selector knob to select it. Then scroll through the values and push the selector knob to make a new selection. (Refer to “Entering Purge Fluid Data” in the Case Start discussion at the beginning of this section for a listing of purge fluid, dextrose concentration, and heparin concentration options.) The controller will use the default values if no other selections are made.

**CHANGE PURGE FLUID**

These are the steps you will follow to change only the purge fluid.

---

**Connecting the Purge Tubing to the Catheter**

- If you have NOT switched to the standard configuration, be sure to connect both the red and yellow luers on the Y connector to the Impella® Catheter.
- If you have switched to the standard configuration, connect the yellow luer on the purge tubing directly to the yellow check valve on the Impella® Catheter.

**Purge Solution Bottles**

- If the purge solution is supplied in bottles, open the vent on the purge fluid spike and follow the same procedure as if supplied in bags.
1. Press **PURGE SYSTEM** and select “Change Purge Fluid.”

2. Select **OK** to deliver a bolus to the pressure reservoir so that the reservoir can maintain purge pressure during the change. A progress bar shows the progress of the bolus. After the bolus is delivered, the controller automatically proceeds to the next screen.

3. Clamp the supply line before removing the purge fluid bag.

4. Replace the purge fluid bag and unclamp the supply line.

5. Select **OK** to complete bag change and start purge system again.

6. Enter the purge fluid information and select **OK**.
   a. To select the default purge fluid values displayed on the screen, scroll to and select **OK**. This will select those values and automatically advance to the next screen.
   b. To change the purge fluid information, scroll to the appropriate item and push the selector knob to select it. Then scroll through the values and push the selector knob to make a new selection. (Refer to “Entering Purge Fluid Data” in the Case Start discussion at the beginning of this section for a listing of purge fluid, dextrose concentration, and heparin concentration options.) The controller will use the default values if no other selections are made.

7. The next screen asks whether you want to flush the fluid from the purge cassette.
   a. To proceed with the flush, scroll to and select **OK**.
   b. To skip the flush, press **EXIT** to complete the Change Purge Fluid procedure.

8. If you are proceeding to flush the purge fluid from the cassette, select **OK** to deliver a bolus to the system. A progress bar shows the progress of the bolus. After the bolus is delivered, the controller automatically proceeds to the next screen.

9. Disconnect the luer(s) from the Impella® Catheter and select **OK** to flush the purge cassette. A progress bar shows the progress of the flush. When complete, the controller proceeds to the next screen.

10. When the purge cassette flush is complete you can connect the luer(s) to the Impella® Catheter to complete the procedure or press **BACK** to repeat the flush.

---

**Changing the Purge Cassette**

The Change Purge Cassette procedure will only be available if the Automated Impella® Controller detects that the cassette is defective, purge pressure is low, or the purge system is open.

---

**Changing the Purge Cassette**

These are the steps you will follow to replace only the purge cassette.

1. Press **PURGE SYSTEM** and select “Change Purge Cassette.”

2. Open the purge cassette package.

3. Disconnect the luer(s) from the Impella® Catheter and remove the used purge cassette.

4. Spike the fluid bag.

5. Insert a new purge cassette into the controller. Be sure to slide the purge disc into place and extend the purge tubing through the gap in the purge cassette door when you close the door.

6. The system automatically primes the purge cassette. A progress bar shows the progress of the priming. Once the priming is complete, you are prompted to connect the purge cassette to the Impella® Catheter.
7. Connect the luer(s) on the end of the purge tubing to the luer(s) on the Impella® Catheter.

8. When the purge cassette change is complete, press OK to exit.

DE-AIR PURGE SYSTEM

These are the steps you will follow to de-air the purge system.

1. Press PURGE SYSTEM and select “De-air Purge System.”
2. Make sure that the purge fluid bag is NOT empty or inverted and that the tubing is NOT clamped.
3. Disconnect the purge tubing from the Impella® Catheter.
4. Press OK to initiate the de-air function. A progress bar shows the progress of the de-air procedure. Once complete, the system advances to the next screen.
5. Confirm that no air remains in the purge tubing. If air remains, press BACK to repeat the air removal process.
6. Connect the purge tubing to the luer(s) on the Impella® Catheter to complete the de-air procedure.

TROUBLESHOOTING THE PURGE SYSTEM

LOW PURGE PRESSURE

If at any time during the course of support with the Impella® Catheter, the Automated Impella® Controller alarms “Purge Pressure Low,” follow the instructions below.

1. Inspect the purge system for leaks.
2. If there are no leaks, change to a purge fluid with a higher dextrose concentration. To do this, open the PURGE SYSTEM menu and select “Change Purge Fluid.” Follow the instructions on the screen. (Refer to “Purge Cassette Procedures” earlier in this section of the manual.) When given the option to flush the fluid from the purge cassette, select OK.
3. If the pressure stabilizes, no other action is required. **If the purge pressure is not stable, proceed to Step 4.**
4. If the low purge pressure alarm remains unresolved for more than 20 minutes, there may be a problem with the purge cassette. Replace the purge cassette. (Refer to “Change Purge Cassette” instructions earlier in this section.)
5. If the low purge pressure alarm still remains unresolved for more than 20 minutes, this may be a sign of Impella® Catheter damage. Complete the following steps immediately:
   a. Open the FLOW CONTROL meter and reduce the P-level to P-2.
b. Slowly pull back on the Impella® Catheter until it is in the descending aorta (approximately 20 cm for an average size patient; 1 cm marks are available on the catheter).

c. Turn off the Impella® Catheter by opening the FLOW CONTROL meter and reducing the P-level to P-0.

d. Disconnect the catheter from the Automated Impella® Controller.

e. Remove the Impella® Catheter with the use of fluoroscopic imaging. If no fluoroscopy is available, leave the catheter in the descending aorta until fluoroscopy is available for visual assistance during removal of the Impella® Catheter.

**PURGE SYSTEM OPEN**

If at any time during the course of support with the Impella® Catheter, the Automated Impella® Controller alarms “Purge System Open,” follow the instructions below.

1. Inspect the purge system for leaks.
2. If no leaks are visible, there may be a problem with the purge cassette. Replace the purge cassette. (Refer to instructions earlier in this section of the manual.)
3. If the Purge System Open alarm remains unresolved, this may be a sign of Impella® Catheter damage. Complete the following steps immediately:
   a. Open the FLOW CONTROL meter and reduce the P-level to P-2.
   b. Slowly pull back on the Impella® Catheter until it is in the descending aorta (approximately 20 cm for an average size patient; 1 cm marks are available on the catheter).
   c. Turn off the Impella® Catheter by opening the FLOW CONTROL meter and reducing the P-level to P-0.
   d. Disconnect the catheter from the Automated Impella® Controller.
   e. Remove the Impella® Catheter with the use of fluoroscopic imaging. If no fluoroscopy is available, leave the catheter in the descending aorta until fluoroscopy is available for visual assistance during removal of the Impella® Catheter.

**HIGH PURGE PRESSURE**

If the purge pressure exceeds 1100 mmHg, the Automated Impella® Controller displays the “Purge Pressure High” alarm message.

1. Inspect the purge system and check the Impella® Catheter for kinks in the tubing.
2. If pressure remains high, decrease the concentration of dextrose in the purge solution.

**PURGE SYSTEM BLOCKED**

If a “Purge System Blocked” alarm occurs, the purge fluid flow stops.

1. Check the purge system tubing and the Impella® Catheter for kinks or blockages.
2. Decrease the concentration of dextrose in the purge solution.
3. Replace the purge cassette.

**PATIENT WEANING**

Weaning the patient from the Impella® Catheter is at the discretion of the physician. The Impella 2.5 and CP Systems have been approved for ≤ 4 days and the Impella 5.0 and LD Systems have been approved for ≤ 6 days of use. However, weaning could be delayed beyond the normal use for temporary support as an unintended consequence of continued instability of the patient’s hemodynamics. Inability to wean the patient from the device within a reasonable time frame should result in consideration of a more durable form of left ventricular support.

The following weaning instructions are provided as guidance only.

1. To initiate weaning, press **FLOW CONTROL** and reduce P-level by 2 level increments over time intervals as cardiac function allows.
2. Keep Impella® Catheter P-level at P-2 or above until the catheter is ready to be explanted from the left ventricle.
3. When the patient’s hemodynamics are stable, reduce the P-level to P-2 and pull the Impella® Catheter back across the aortic valve into the aorta.
4. If the patient’s hemodynamics remain stable, follow instructions in the next section for removing the Impella® Catheter.

**REMOVING THE IMPELLA® 2.5, 5.0, OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER**

The Impella® Catheter can be removed after weaning when the introducer is still in place or when the catheter is secured with the repositioning sheath.

**REMOVING THE IMPELLA® WITH THE INTRODUCER IN PLACE**

1. Reduce the P-level to P-0.
2. Remove the Impella® Catheter through the introducer.
3. Wait until ACT drops below 150 seconds.
4. When ACT is below 150 seconds, remove the introducer.
5. Disconnect the connector cable from the Automated Impella® Controller and turn the controller off by pressing the power switch on the side of the controller for 3 seconds.
6. Apply manual compression for 40 minutes or per hospital protocol.

**REMOVING THE IMPELLA® SECURED WITH THE REPOSITIONING SHEATH**

1. When ACT is below 150 seconds, press FLOW CONTROL and reduce the P-level to P-0.
2. Remove the Impella® Catheter and repositioning sheath together (the catheter will not come through the repositioning sheath).
3. Disconnect the connector cable from the Automated Impella® Controller and turn the controller off by pressing the power switch on the side of the controller for 3 seconds.
4. Apply manual compression for 40 minutes or per hospital protocol.

**REMOVING THE IMPELLA CP® WHILE MAINTAINING GUIDEWIRE ACCESS (FOR PUMPS THAT HAVE THE REPOSITIONING SHEATH WITH GUIDEWIRE ACCESS)**

1. Remove the stylet from the guidewire access port.
2. Aspirate using a syringe to ensure that the line is patent; confirm pulsatile blood flow from entrance port.
3. Advance the 0.035” (or smaller) guidewire with an atraumatic tip through the guidewire access port using the supplied cheater.

*Figure 5.51 Removing the Stylet*
4. Advance the guidewire tip into the descending aorta under fluoroscopic guidance.
5. Loosen the anticontamination sleeve by rotating the Tuohy-Borst valve counterclockwise.

6. Anchor the guidewire and repositioning unit and withdraw the catheter until the distal end of the catheter reaches the distal tip of the repositioning unit.
7. With the guidewire anchored and pressure applied to the access site, completely remove the Impella® Catheter and repositioning sheath together.

EXPLANTING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER

PREPARATION FOR EXPLANT

1. Gain exposure and clear access to the ascending aorta insertion site, the Dacron® vascular graft, and the sites at which the silicone plugs are secured to the graft.
2. Complete the weaning procedure at P-2 as described previously.
3. Undo the penetrating suture from the front silicone plug and remove the suture entirely.
4. Remove the ligature from the rear silicone plug and remove the plug from the end of the vascular graft.
5. Maintaining distal control digitally, remove the final circumferential ligature from the front silicone plug.
6. Allow controlled bleed-back through the graft to clear any residual thrombus from the lumen of the graft.

PULLING THE IMPELLA® LD CATHETER INTO THE ASCENDING AORTA

Perform the following steps under the guidance of transesophageal echocardiography (TEE).

1. Immediately prior to pulling the Impella® LD Catheter across the aortic valve, reduce the P-level to P-1.

2. Carefully pull the Impella® LD Catheter back through the aortic valve and into the ascending aorta. Depending on the level of the insertion site, a portion of the catheter may be pulled through the aortotomy and into the vascular graft.

3. Immediately reduce the P-level to P-0 after the Impella® LD Catheter crosses the aortic valve and enters the ascending aorta.

4. Gently pull the Impella® LD Catheter completely through the aortotomy and into the vascular graft.

5. Close the graft.

VASCULAR GRAFT CLOSURE

When closing the vascular graft, consider individual patient characteristics and select the strategy most consistent with an optimal clinical result. The entire vascular graft can be removed if indicated, but it is not mandatory to do so. Graft closure options include:

- Amputating the vascular graft and sewing the small end-to-side remnant closed by hand
- Using a vascular stapler to close the graft near the surface of the aorta
- Removing the complete graft with local patch closure, if necessary
6 CLINICAL EXPERIENCE

CARDIAC SHOCK AFTER ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION ......................6.1

SUMMARY OF PRIMARY CLINICAL STUDIES ............................................6.1

  Prospective Randomized Trial: ISAR-SHOCK (For Impella 2.5) ...............6.1
  Clinical Inclusion and Exclusion Criteria ..............................................6.1
  Clinical Endpoints ..................................................................................6.2
  Accountability of PMA Cohort ...............................................................6.2
  Study Population Demographics and Baseline Parameters ......................6.3
  Safety and Effectiveness Results .............................................................6.4
  Device Failures and Replacements .........................................................6.6
  Financial Disclosure ...............................................................................6.6

SUMMARY OF SUPPLEMENTAL CLINICAL INFORMATION ....................6.7

  Real-World Impella Registry Results (For all Impella Devices) ...............6.7
  Additional Analysis of the Impella Registry Data .......................................6.10
  Benchmarking Impella vs. Approved VAD in AMICS .............................6.12
  Hemodynamic Effectiveness Results .......................................................6.14
  Literature Review ....................................................................................6.16

CARDIAC SHOCK AFTER OPEN HEART SURGERY .................................6.17

SUMMARY OF PRIMARY CLINICAL STUDIES .........................................6.17

  Clinical Inclusion and Exclusion Criteria ...............................................6.17
  Clinical Endpoints ..................................................................................6.18
  Accountability of PMA Cohort ...............................................................6.19
  Study Baseline Parameters .....................................................................6.19
  Safety and Effectiveness Results .............................................................6.21
  Device Failures and Replacements .........................................................6.22
  Financial Disclosure ...............................................................................6.22

SUMMARY OF SUPPLEMENTAL CLINICAL INFORMATION .................6.23

  Results ....................................................................................................6.23
  Hemodynamic Effectiveness Results .......................................................6.30
  Literature Review ....................................................................................6.31
CARDIAC SHOCK AFTER ACUTE MYOCARDIAL INFARCTION

SUMMARY OF PRIMARY CLINICAL STUDIES

PROSPECTIVE RANDOMIZED TRIAL: ISAR-SHOCK (FOR IMPELLA 2.5)

To support for safety and effectiveness, data from a small prospective randomized clinical trial (RCT) was used. The ISAR-SHOCK trial was designed as a prospective, two-center, randomized, open-label study designed to test whether the Impella 2.5 provides superior hemodynamic improvement as compared to the standard procedure utilizing IABP for AMICS patients.

The trial was designed to assess the hemodynamic robustness of the Impella 2.5 against IABP (primary endpoint), as measured by the improvement of cardiac support after device support initiation. Safety data (survival and adverse events) were also studied (secondary endpoints). Details of the study design are below.

CLINICAL INCLUSION AND EXCLUSION CRITERIA

Eligible patients were those who presented with cardiogenic shock within 48 hours of an acute myocardial infarction or suspicion of an acute coronary syndrome. The inclusion and exclusion criteria are below.

Inclusion Criteria

1. Systolic Blood Pressure (SBP) < 90 mmHg during angina pectoris and heart rate > 90/min OR use of catecholamines to maintain SBP > 90 mmHg during angina pectoris; AND
2. Signs of end-organ hypoperfusion OR Signs of left ventricular failure (Killip class 3 or 4)
3. Left Ventricular Ejection Fraction (LVEF) < 30% and Left Ventricular End-Diastolic Pressure (LVEDP) > 20 mmHg
4. Cardiac Index (CI) < 2.2 l/min/m² and Pulmonary Capillary Wedge Pressure (PCWP) > 15 mmHg

Exclusion Criteria (Clinical Only)

1. Age less than 18 years old
2. Resuscitation for more than 30 minutes
3. Obstructive, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy
4. Marginal thrombus in the left ventricle
5. Subjects with implanted IABP at the point in time of randomization
6. Mechanical mitral and/or aortic valve, and/or severe valve stenosis
7. Mechanical cause of cardiogenic shock
8. Right ventricular failure
9. Sepsis
10. Brain damage or suspicion of brain damage
11. Surgically uncontrollable bleeding
12. Massive pulmonary embolism
13. Known coagulopathy or allergy to heparin
14. Aortic insufficiency
15. Participation in another clinical study
16. Pregnancy

Patients were followed up to 6 months. Procedural, hemodynamic, blood data and concomitant medications including catecholamines requirement were collected at baseline and at different times as prescribed by the protocol. Adverse events were recorded throughout the duration of the study.

**CLINICAL ENDPOINTS**

**Primary Endpoint**
- Hemodynamic improvement within the first 60 minutes after implantation, as measured by an improvement in cardiac index (CI) immediately following implantation of the study support device.

**Secondary Endpoints**
- Hemodynamic change during the course of treatment, which is defined as the change in measured values from the baseline (pre-implantation) after 24 and 48 hours using a generally recognized catecholamine dosage.
- Change in the catecholamine dosage for adrenalin or dobutamine from baseline compared to 6, 24, 48 and 96 hours after implantation.
- Survival for 30 days.
- Rates of all adverse events up to 30 days post-implantation.
- Lactate release (defined as a change in the lactate value from baseline compared to 6, 24, 48 and 96 hours after implantation).

**ACCOUNTABILITY OF PMA COHORT**

Twenty-seven (27) subjects were enrolled in ISAR-SHOCK at 2 centers in Germany between September 15, 2004 and February 17, 2007. Fourteen (14) patients were randomized to the Impella arm and 13 patients to the IABP arm. One (1) patient in the Impella arm (A-03-a) withdrew following consent, but prior to initiation on support. No data was captured for this patient. In addition, one (1) patient in the Impella arm (B-07-a) expired after randomization but prior to device placement.
**STUDY POPULATION DEMOGRAPHICS AND BASELINE PARAMETERS**

Study population demographics, characteristics and hemodynamics are provided below.

### Table 6.1  Baseline demographics and characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>All Subjects</th>
<th>IABP</th>
<th>Impella 2.5</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of subjects</td>
<td>26</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age in years (mean ± SD)</td>
<td>65 ± 13</td>
<td>67 ± 15</td>
<td>63 ± 10</td>
<td>0.390</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male %,(number)</td>
<td>73% (19)</td>
<td>85% (11)</td>
<td>62% (8)</td>
<td>0.378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LVEF % (mean ± SD)</td>
<td>27 ± 11</td>
<td>28 ± 12</td>
<td>26 ± 11</td>
<td>0.619</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of catecholamines at baseline (mean ± SD)</td>
<td>1.2 ± 0.7</td>
<td>1.0± 0.4</td>
<td>1.3± 0.9</td>
<td>0.253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes %,(number)</td>
<td>27% (7)</td>
<td>8% (1)</td>
<td>46% (6)</td>
<td>0.030</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smoking %,(number)</td>
<td>42% (11)</td>
<td>46% (6)</td>
<td>38% (5)</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypercholesterolemia %,(number)</td>
<td>38% (10)</td>
<td>38% (5)</td>
<td>38% (5)</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arterial Hypertension %,(number)</td>
<td>38% (10)</td>
<td>54% (7)</td>
<td>23% (3)</td>
<td>0.370</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anterior myocardial infarction (number) %</td>
<td>50% (13)</td>
<td>54% (7)</td>
<td>46% (6)</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time from AMI to support device implant in hours (mean ± SD)</td>
<td>9.9 ± 6.4</td>
<td>9.4 ± 6.6</td>
<td>10.4 ± 6.5</td>
<td>0.696</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 6.2  Baseline hemodynamics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>All (mean ± SD) (n=25)</th>
<th>IABP (mean ± SD) (n=13)</th>
<th>Impella 2.5 (mean ± SD) (n=12)</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac Index [l/min/m2]</td>
<td>1.8 ± 0.6</td>
<td>1.8 ± 0.8</td>
<td>1.7 ± 0.5</td>
<td>0.820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate [bpm]</td>
<td>96.8 ± 24.7</td>
<td>97.9 ± 24.7</td>
<td>95.5 ± 25.8</td>
<td>0.820</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systolic art. pressure [mmHg]</td>
<td>104.0 ± 21.4</td>
<td>98.6 ± 21.5</td>
<td>109.8 ± 20.6</td>
<td>0.196</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diastolic art. pressure [mmHg]</td>
<td>60.8 ± 14.3</td>
<td>56.5 ± 12.4</td>
<td>65.5 ± 15.2</td>
<td>0.117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean arterial pressure [mmHg]</td>
<td>74.9 ± 15.9</td>
<td>71.0 ± 15.6</td>
<td>79.2 ± 15.8</td>
<td>0.206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systemic vasc. resistance [dyn sec-5]</td>
<td>1605 ± 620</td>
<td>1569 ± 775</td>
<td>1647 ± 399</td>
<td>0.766</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary capillary wedge pressure [mmHg]</td>
<td>22.1 ± 7.2</td>
<td>21.5 ± 6.7</td>
<td>22.8 ± 8.0</td>
<td>0.685</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Central venous pressure [mmHg]</td>
<td>12.4 ± 6.3</td>
<td>12.3 ± 5.6</td>
<td>12.6 ± 7.3</td>
<td>0.916</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactate [mmol/l]</td>
<td>6.5 ± 4.3</td>
<td>6.6 ± 4.0</td>
<td>6.5 ± 4.7</td>
<td>0.947</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SAFETY AND EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

The safety endpoint, 30-day survival, which was the secondary endpoint in the trial, is provided in Figure 6.1. There was an initial trend for better survival for Impella 2.5 while on device support but late death events occurred with no difference at 30 days. The study was not powered for survival differences to be established between devices considering the limited sample size, therefore, no definitive statement with respect to survival benefit can be made.

![Kaplan-Meier survival curves survival (to 30 days) for the ISAR-SHOCK trial](image)

In addition, Adverse Events (AEs) were monitored for the trial for 30 days post-implant as secondary endpoint. There were no serious AEs (SAEs) reported. There were four (4) non-serious AEs reported, as shown in Table 6.3.

Table 6.3  Adverse Events Monitoring

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cohort</th>
<th>Adverse Event(s)</th>
<th>Outcome</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impella</td>
<td>Bleeding at insertion site</td>
<td>Manual compression needed (for 20 minutes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hemolysis (two consecutive blood samples)</td>
<td>Resolved in 1 day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Hematoma at insertion site</td>
<td>Resolved in 1 week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IABP</td>
<td>Ventricular tachycardia</td>
<td>Resolved in 1 day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A third safety endpoint, the lactate levels following support was monitored. This data is given in Figure 6.2. The results were similar for both study cohorts.
The effectiveness endpoint, which was the primary endpoint of the study, was the change of cardiac index from baseline after device support. The ISAR-SHOCK study showed a significant improvement of cardiac index in the Impella 2.5 arm compared to the IABP arm post device insertion, as shown in Figure 6.3. In addition, after 24 hours of support, fewer patients supported with the Impella 2.5 required inotropes compared to patients supported with an IABP, as shown in Figure 6.4.
Figure 6.4 Change in inotropic dosage at 24 hours, Impella vs. IABP in patients treated for cardiogenic shock after an AMI (ISAR-SHOCK)

DEVICE FAILURES AND REPLACEMENTS

There were no device failures or replacements reported during the study.

FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE

The Financial Disclosure by Clinical Investigators regulation (21 CFR 54) requires applicants who submit a marketing application to include certain information concerning the compensation to, and financial interests and arrangement of, any clinical investigator conducting clinical studies covered by the regulation. This clinical study included 2 investigators. Neither of the clinical investigators had disclosable financial interests/arrangements as defined in sections 54.2(a), (b), (c), and (f). The information provided does not raise any questions about the reliability of the data.
SUMMARY OF SUPPLEMENTAL CLINICAL INFORMATION

Supplemental data from the Impella registry was provided to demonstrate real world use for the patient population. Several analyses of the Impella Registry data were provided to support the safety and effectiveness of use of the Impella devices. An analysis of the Impella Registry was also provided to differentiate the outcomes for different treatment groups. In addition, the sponsor also provided a benchmark comparison of the Impella Registry data to a comparable registry dataset for its surgical VAD, the AB5000 Ventricle (PMA approved for a similar indication). Clinical data from a separate clinical trial (RECOVER I) was also provided to demonstrate hemodynamic effectiveness of the Impella 5.0/LD device during use. As further evidence, a detailed literature review was also provided to support the overall safety and efficacy of the Impella devices.

REAL-WORLD IMPELLA REGISTRY RESULTS (FOR ALL IMPELLA DEVICES)

The Impella Registry is an ongoing, multi-center, retrospective, observational registry for collection of de-identified data for patients treated with the Impella 2.5, Impella CP, Impella 5.0 and Impella LD Support Systems. The registry, which was started by Abiomed in 2009, is open for participation by qualifying sites in the U.S. and Canada. Since the registry was started to date a total 59 sites have participated. As of June 30, 2015, there were 40 open sites. The sites include high and low volume centers, academic (teaching) and non-academic hospitals, public and private institutions as well as for profit and not for profit centers, almost entirely from the United States, thus providing a good representation of U.S. clinical practice. In addition, Abiomed used the Impella Registry as supporting evidence in its original PMA (P140003) application for the Impella 2.5 System. After reviewing the data, the FDA stated (In the PMA’s SSED):

“Use of the device in a comparable patient group, as collected retrospectively via Abiomed’s USpella (Impella Registry) database, showed results similar to those obtained in the PROTECT II clinical trial for overall patient outcomes and hemodynamic support during use.”

The data collection from the Impella Registry includes IRB approval, complete data monitoring, adverse events (AEs) monitoring and CEC adjudication of major AEs. All data is entered electronically by the sites. For this PMA, the time during which the Impella Registry data was used is shown in Figure 6.5. Eligible patients were those who were reported in the Impella Registry presented with AMICS and underwent mechanical revascularization with either percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI) or coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG) and required mechanical circulatory support with Impella devices.
Figure 6.5 Time intervals for Impella implants data collection by type of device

Cases were initially identified using Abiomed’s commercial patient tracking system, and then further reviewed to verify that each case was applicable for this supplement (i.e. was an AMICS patient). Using this method, three hundred twenty four (324) Impella cases were enrolled into the U.S. Impella Registry for this analysis. These included 189 Impella 2.5 cases, 111 Impella CP cases and 24 (combined) Impella 5.0 and Impella LD cases.

The data included: patient’s demographics and baseline characteristics (risk factors, medical history and history of previous cardiac interventions), clinical presentation for the index hospitalization, index cardiac procedure information, Impella device information, hemodynamic parameters pre, during and post Impella support, cardiovascular medication, laboratory results, patient’s outcome information at discharge and 30-day follow-up as well as site-reported adverse events. Both site-reported safety data and CEC-adjudicated data are presented.

The data showed that AMICS patients were on average 65 years old, the majority were male (75%) with significant risk factors and comorbidities including smoking (48%), diabetes (42%), hypertension (71%), renal insufficiency (24%), a Society of Thoracic Surgery (STS) scores for mortality of 21% and morbidity of 60%. The patients presented with high heart rate, poor hemodynamics despite pressors and inotropes, signs of tissue hypoperfusion (lactates) and end-organ dysfunction (creatinine). These characteristics were generally the same for all Impella devices, except for: the gender distribution had more male patients in the Impella 2.5 and Impella CP groups (compared to Impella 5.0/LD) and a higher proportion of patients transferred from outlying facility in patients supported with the Impella 5.0/LD (compared to patients supported with the Impella 2.5 or Impella CP).
As a further breakdown of the survival outcomes, 29% of the patients expired on Impella device support and 71% were successfully supported to recovery or to next therapy (bridge-to-bridge). In aggregate, 45.7% were discharged (85.8% with recovery, 12.8% transferred to another hospital on Impella support for care management and potential heart transplant or bridge-to-transplant or destination therapy, 1.35% discharged on long-term implantable VAD). By device, 45%, 46% and 50% of the Impella patients survived to discharge for the Impella 2.5, CP and 5.0/LD, respectively. There was no observed difference in outcomes between the different devices, but a trend for better outcomes was seen for patients treated with Impella 5.0/LD (see Figure 6.7).
ADDITIONAL ANALYSIS OF THE IMPELLA REGISTRY DATA

An additional analysis of different subsets of the Impella Registry patients was provided. The analysis was completed to attempt to evaluate a potential benefit of Impella in a subgroup of the Impella Registry patients, which would be similar to patients selected in prior randomized AMICS RCTs. This was accomplished by dividing the Impella Registry into two groups, a “RCT group” or a group who may have qualified for an AMICS RCT that has been conducted (i.e., SHOCK trial) and a group of “salvage” patients, who would typically be excluded from an AMICS RCT. Specifically, the “salvage patient population” included patients who presented with anoxic brain injury prior to implant, out of hospital cardiac arrest and those who were transferred from outlying hospital. These higher risk patients would usually be excluded from RCTs because of the time delay in providing care or severity of the insult that makes the shock irreversible despite effective hemodynamic support. The RCT subgroup consisted of 111 patients and the “salvage” subgroup was made up of the remaining 209 patients:

The overall 30-day survival results (Kaplan-Meier curve estimates) for the two subgroups described above are shown in Figure 6.8. As expected, the “salvage” group of patients has poorer outcomes than the RCT group, which is more representative of patients chosen for AMICS RCTs.

In addition, the outcomes data for both 30-day survival and survival to discharge are provided in Figures 6.9 and 6.10, respectively, for each Impella device. Interestingly, there appears to be a trend (most noticeable for the RCT group) for an incremental improvement in outcomes with increased flow (from Impella 2.5 to Impella 5.0/LD). This trend reinforces the principle that an increase in the amount of support (CPO) affects outcomes in patients in whom the cardiogenic shock condition is still reversible.

![Figure 6.8 Outcomes between Impella Registry subgroups: Patients likely to be eligible for RCTs vs. Patients likely to be excluded from RCTs (“salvage” patients)](image-url)
BENCHMARKING IMPELLA VS. APPROVED VAD IN AMICS

In order to provide a benchmark for the Impella devices in a comparable clinical setting (AMICS), Abiomed analyzed the results from its real-world registry for the AB5000 Ventricle. The AB5000 Ventricle was PMA approved (P900023/S038) in 2003 as a temporary VAD for use to treat AMICS. The AB5000 Registry was a retrospective registry, which included data collected from U.S. sites between October 3, 2003 and December 11, 2007. The AB5000 Registry included data with demographics, procedural and hemodynamic characteristics, outcomes and adverse events.
The AB5000 Registry includes 2,152 patients. After reviewing the AB5000 Registry and matching the two cohorts (Impella and AB5000 for AMICS), 115 cases from the AB5000 Registry were eligible match for the benchmark analysis.

The benchmark analysis included the overall survival to 30 days and to discharge in the AMICS patient group. The 30-day Kaplan-Meier estimates are provided in Figure 6.11. The results are provided for each Impella device. In addition, the survival-to-discharge results are provided in Figure 6.12.

The trends in the Kaplan Meier curve support the assertion that outcomes are improved when more robust hemodynamic support (i.e., flow) is provided to these hemodynamically compromised patients. Indeed, Impella 5.0/LD and AB5000 initially exhibit the highest survival. However, the data shows that the survival to discharge was significantly lower in the AB5000 cohort compared to the Impella cohort (30.43% vs. 45.68%, p=0.036), even though the
AB5000 is the most potent device. For this comparison, the longer duration of support and the invasiveness of the AB5000 likely increases the risk of device related morbidities as the support is extended. These issues can result in serious complications culminating in death events. Therefore, a potential benefit of the higher hemodynamic support of a surgical VAD is offset by the high complication rates that impair outcomes.

In addition, to assess overall safety of use of the Impella devices, the rates of site-reported in-hospital adverse events were compared. The results of this comparison are provided in Table 6.4. There are several noteworthy differences between the Impella and AB5000 safety profile.

- The cerebral vascular accident (CVA) and stroke events were significantly higher in AB5000 cohort compared to the Impella devices, which could be explained by the longer duration of support with the AB5000, and its much larger blood contacting device surface area and areas of stasis in the device that interact with the patient blood compared to the Impella device.

- The bleeding rates differed among the groups. For Impella 5.0/LD group, only 4 patients underwent percutaneous coronary intervention, with the remainder receiving surgical revascularization (i.e., a CABG procedure). As a result, the bleeding rates were similar between the Impella 5.0/LD and AB5000. These were mainly surgical bleeding. However, the bleeding rates for Impella 2.5 and Impella CP, which were placed percutaneously in AMICS patients undergoing PCI, were much lower compared to the other two groups. There were no device-related bleeding events reported.

- There were also differences in the infection rates, with higher incidence in the Impella 5.0/LD and AB5000 groups. Although infections were reported more frequently for the Impella 5.0/LD, this most likely due to more rigorous contemporary process of reporting adverse events, including all infections (urinary tract infections, streptococcus throat, etc.) in the Impella Registry. None of the infections was determined to be related to the device.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverse Events</th>
<th>Impella 2.5 (n=189)</th>
<th>Impella CP (n=111)</th>
<th>Impella 5.0/LD (n=24)</th>
<th>AB5000/BVS/AB (n=115)</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>55.03% (104/189)</td>
<td>54.05% (60/111)</td>
<td>50.00% (12/24)</td>
<td>69.57% (80/115)</td>
<td>0.036</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVA/Stroke</td>
<td>2.65% (5/189)</td>
<td>3.60% (4/111)</td>
<td>4.17% (1/24)</td>
<td>21.74% (25/115)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIA</td>
<td>0.00% (0/189)</td>
<td>0.00% (0/111)</td>
<td>0.00% (0/24)</td>
<td>5.22% (6/115)</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute Renal Dysfunction</td>
<td>27.51% (52/189)</td>
<td>31.53% (35/111)</td>
<td>41.67% (10/24)</td>
<td>25.22% (29/115)</td>
<td>0.355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemolysis</td>
<td>8.47% (16/189)</td>
<td>10.81% (12/111)</td>
<td>8.33% (2/24)</td>
<td>10.43% (12/115)</td>
<td>0.900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute Hepatic Failure</td>
<td>10.58% (20/189)</td>
<td>16.22% (18/111)</td>
<td>12.50% (3/24)</td>
<td>11.30% (13/115)</td>
<td>0.516</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleeding</td>
<td>19.58% (37/189)</td>
<td>17.12% (19/111)</td>
<td>41.67% (10/24)</td>
<td>37.39% (43/115)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>17.46% (33/189)</td>
<td>13.51% (15/111)</td>
<td>50.00% (12/24)</td>
<td>26.96% (31/115)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 6.4  Site-reported adverse events (to discharge) by classification (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverse Events</th>
<th>Impella 2.5 (n=189)</th>
<th>Impella CP (n=111)</th>
<th>Impella 5.0/LD (n=24)</th>
<th>AB5000/ BVS/AB (n=115)</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MSOF</td>
<td>1.59% (3/189)</td>
<td>0.00% (0/111)</td>
<td>4.17% (1/24)</td>
<td>18.26% (21/115)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory Dysfunction/Failure</td>
<td>10.05% (19/189)</td>
<td>14.41% (16/111)</td>
<td>41.67% (10/24)</td>
<td>22.61% (26/115)</td>
<td>&lt;.001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraventricular Arrhythmia</td>
<td>5.82% (11/189)</td>
<td>6.31% (7/111)</td>
<td>16.67% (4/24)</td>
<td>7.83% (9/115)</td>
<td>0.253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>19.58% (37/189)</td>
<td>18.02% (20/111)</td>
<td>41.67% (10/24)</td>
<td>27.83% (32/115)</td>
<td>0.032</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CVA: Cerebrovascular accident; TIA: Transient Ischemic Attack; MSOF: Multi System Organ Failure

Overall, the benchmark analysis reveals that AMICS patients in the Impella Registry had better outcomes to discharge than the patients in the AB5000 Registry. This is likely due to the increased risk with mortality and morbidity associated with a prolonged support and invasiveness that comes with the AB5000 technology. The comparison also showed that the rates of complications were lower in the U.S. Impella Registry cohort. This may have been a result of the less invasive approach for insertion and operation, shorter duration of support, ease of use to allow earlier mobilization of patients and a reduced ICU and hospital stay.

HEMODYNAMIC EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

The Impella Catheters directly unload the left ventricle (LV) and propel blood forward, from the left ventricle into the aorta, in a manner most consistent with normal physiology. Impella provides both an active forward flow, and systemic aortic pressure (AOP) contribution, leading to an effective increase in mean arterial pressure (MAP) and overall cardiac power output (CPO). Combined with LV unloading, Impella support reduces end-diastolic volume and pressure (EDV, EDP) and augments peak coronary flow, leading to a favorable alteration of the balance of myocardial oxygen supply and demand. This cascade of hemodynamic effects has been described in the literature and validated in computational modeling and a variety of pre-clinical and clinical studies.

As initial clinical evidence of the hemodynamic benefits of Impella support, results from a clinical trial with the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD are provided. The study, RECOVER I, was an FDA-approved prospective, single-arm study that evaluated the safety, hemodynamic benefit and feasibility for the Impella 5.0 and the Impella LD in a post-cardiotomy settings. As part of the study, hemodynamic data was collected at baseline and over time to evaluate the robustness of the hemodynamic support with the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD devices in patients experiencing hemodynamic compromise/cardiogenic shock post cardiac surgery. Cardiac output (CO), cardiac index (CI), mean arterial pressure (MAP), cardiac power output (CPO), cardiac power index (CPI) and pulmonary artery diastolic blood pressure (PAd) measurements were collected. The data collected showed an immediate improvement of the hemodynamics of PCCS patients post device implant, as shown in Figure 6.13. In addition, concomitantly, as patients’ hemodynamics improved, a rapid and sustained weaning of inotropic and pressor support was also observed, as given Figure 6.14.
Figure 6.13 Improvement in patient hemodynamics (from baseline to 48hrs post device implant) for RECOVER I patients

Figure 6.14 Decrease in inotropes and pressors (post-device placement) for RECOVER I patients
Additional hemodynamic and other clinical data was provided from both an FDA approved prospective randomized study (PROTECT II) and real-world use data to further corroborate the hemodynamic benefits afforded by use of the Impella devices.

**LITERATURE REVIEW**

The literature review provided has three components. The first component is a review and characterization of the use of Impella to treat AMICS patients. The second component is a comparison of the results of the Impella literature review to a literature review of Abiomed’s PMA approved surgical VADs (the BVS and ABS000) in AMICS. The third component is a literature review of the use of ECMO in this population, since ECMO is used as an alternative device to support these patients as well, albeit off-label.

The Impella review encompassed a large body of scientific evidence with over 315 publications available for review. The filtering of these publications resulted in over 692 patients in 17 publications for the relevant use of Impella devices, which included 469 patients in 9 publications treated for this specific proposed indication for use. The literature review provides further insight into the use of the Impella devices in routine clinical practice.

The literature analysis shows that AMICS patients, who are deemed to require emergent hemodynamic support, are, in general, older and present with high-risk comorbidities, poor functional status and greatly depressed cardiac function. Overall, the use of Impella devices to support AMICS patients appears to be safe and effective, based on the studies published in the literature. The survival rates and morbidities also appear to be favorable for use of the Impella devices as compared to the surgical VADs.

The review of ECMO in these same patients yielded a mean survival to either discharge of 30 days at 43% (range 29% to 59%) representing 6 studies and over 265 patients. The results of the ECMO review indicate that the use of ECMO, which is a much more invasive system, yielded a higher morbidity profile during support than use of the less invasive Impella devices for a potential comparable or less favorable survival outcome.

Overall, the literature analysis provides further reasonable assurance of safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices in the proposed indications for use.
CARDIAC SHOCK AFTER OPEN HEART SURGERY

SUMMARY OF PRIMARY CLINICAL STUDIES

Clinical evidence was provided to support the overall safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices to treat the indications for use provided above. Specifically, the results of the RECOVER I study were provided as primary clinical evidence. RECOVER I was an FDA approved prospective, single-arm study that evaluated the safety, hemodynamic benefit and feasibility for the Impella 5.0 and the Impella LD in a post-cardiotomy setting.

RECOVER I was a single arm study designed to evaluate the safety, hemodynamic potency and outcomes of the Impella 5.0/LD in patients presenting with cardiogenic shock or low cardiac output syndrome post weaning from cardiopulmonary bypass. Details of the study design are below.

CLINICAL INCLUSION AND EXCLUSION CRITERIA

Inclusion Criteria

1. Signed Informed Consent
2. Age Eligible (18 ≤ Age ≤ 75)
3. Body Surface Area (1.5 m² ≤ BSA ≤ 2.5 m²)
4. Received stable infusion of one (1) high dose inotrope or two (2) medium dose inotropes
5. Cardiac Index (1.3 L/min/m² ≤ Cardiac Index ≤ 2.2 L/min/m²) after the respective minimum inotrope infusion time
6. Elevated Filling Pressures: 30 ≥ PCWP ≥ 20 mmHg OR 35 ≥ PA
7. Diastolic ≥ 25 mmHg
8. Time to enrollment within 48 hours of weaning from bypass

Exclusion Criteria

1. Concomitant enrollment in another investigational device or drug trial that did not complete the required follow-up
2. BUN ≥ 100 mg/dL
3. Renal dysfunction
4. Hepatic dysfunction
5. Presence of any cardiac assist device (other than an IABP)
6. Right ventricular failure
7. Evidence of any vascular disease that would have precluded placement of the device (e.g., severely calcified vessel)

8. Evidence of LV or RV thrombus

9. Documented presence of aortic insufficiency

10. Aortic valve stenosis/calcification

11. Presence of mechanical aortic valve

12. Obstructive, hypertrophic cardiomyopathy

13. Evidence of uncorrected Ventricular Septal Defect or Atrial Septal Defect (VSD/ASD) or Patent Foramen Ovale (PFO)

14. Mechanical manifestation of AMI (e.g., ventricular septal rupture, papillary muscle rupture)

15. Any disorder causing fragility of blood cells or hemolysis

16. Patient actively receiving cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) or any resuscitative maneuver for cardiac arrest

17. Sustained or non-sustained ventricular tachycardia/ventricular fibrillation (VT/VF), unresponsive to treatment

18. Other co-morbid condition(s) that could have limited the patient’s ability to participate in the study or impact its scientific integrity

Patients were assessed at 30, 60, 180 days and 1 year. During the assessments, clinical data was obtained to assess the endpoints below.

**CLINICAL ENDPOINTS**

**Primary Endpoints**
- Safety - Frequency of Major Adverse Events:
  - Death
  - Stroke
- Efficacy - Survival to:
  - Recovery defined as 30-day survival post-explant or hospital discharge (whichever is longer) with no other mechanical support or IABP
  - Bridge-to-other-therapy defined as induction of anesthesia for surgery for cardiac transplantation OR approved Ventricular Assist Device

**Secondary Endpoints**
- Safety
  - Frequency of other Adverse Events (at 30, 60, 180, 365 days)
- Efficacy
  - Improved Hemodynamics—Post-device implant improvements in hemodynamics were to be demonstrated without additional adjunctive inotropic or vasoactive medications versus baseline
  - Device Placement and Technical Success
  - Time-to-Recovery
  - Reduction in Inotropic/Pressor Support
ACCOUNTABILITY OF PMA COHORT

The study enrolled 17 patients at 7 enrolling sites from October 18, 2006 to June 4, 2008. The overall enrollment for the RECOVER I trial is shown in Figure 6.15.

Figure 6.15  RECOVER I enrollment
AMI: Acute Myocardial Infarction; CABG: Coronary Artery Bypass Grafting; FDA: Food and Drug Administration; MVR: Mitral Valve Repair or Replacement; OHT: Orthotopic Heart Transplant; VAD: Ventricular Assist Device

STUDY BASELINE PARAMETERS

The baseline patient characteristics and hemodynamics are provided below.

Table 6.5  Baseline patient characteristics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Characteristic</th>
<th>RECOVER I Patients (N=16)</th>
<th>[95% CI]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Age</strong></td>
<td>58.38±8.94 (16)</td>
<td>[53.61,63.14]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gender</strong></td>
<td>Male 81.25% (13/16)</td>
<td>[54.35%,95.95%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Weight (kg)</strong></td>
<td>90.96±23.03 (16)</td>
<td>[78.69,103.23]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Height (cm)</strong></td>
<td>174.21±10.36 (16)</td>
<td>[168.68,179.73]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BSA (m²)</strong></td>
<td>2.05±0.28 (16)</td>
<td>[1.90,2.20]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Race</strong></td>
<td>Caucasian 50.00% (8/16)</td>
<td>[24.65%,75.35%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>African American 31.25% (5/16)</td>
<td>[11.02%,58.66%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Asian Pacific 18.75% (3/16)</td>
<td>[4.05%,45.65%]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 6.5  Baseline patient characteristics (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient Characteristic</th>
<th>RECOVER I Patients (N=16)</th>
<th>[95% CI]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Medical History</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAD</td>
<td>81.25% (13/16)</td>
<td>[54.35%, 95.95%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unstable Angina</td>
<td>43.75% (7/16)</td>
<td>[19.75%, 70.12%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myocardial Infarction</td>
<td>68.75% (11/16)</td>
<td>[41.34%, 88.98%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHF</td>
<td>75.00% (12/16)</td>
<td>[47.62%, 92.73%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valve Disease</td>
<td>46.67% (7/15)</td>
<td>[21.27%, 73.41%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pacemaker/AICD</td>
<td>12.50% (2/16)</td>
<td>[1.55%, 38.35%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral Vascular Disease</td>
<td>14.29% (2/14)</td>
<td>[1.78%, 42.81%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prior Stroke</td>
<td>6.25% (1/16)</td>
<td>[0.16%, 30.23%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes Mellitus</td>
<td>37.50% (6/16)</td>
<td>[15.20%, 64.57%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>62.50% (10/16)</td>
<td>[35.43%, 84.80%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COPD</td>
<td>12.50% (2/16)</td>
<td>[1.55%, 38.35%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>NYHA Class</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
<td>8.33% (1/12)</td>
<td>[0.21%, 38.48%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>16.67% (2/12)</td>
<td>[2.09%, 48.41%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III</td>
<td>25.00% (3/12)</td>
<td>[5.49%, 57.19%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV</td>
<td>50.00% (6/12)</td>
<td>[21.09%, 78.91%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III or IV</td>
<td>75.00% (9/12)</td>
<td>[42.81%, 94.51%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Prior Cardiac Procedures</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombolytic Therapy</td>
<td>18.75% (3/16)</td>
<td>[4.05%, 45.65%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCI</td>
<td>33.33% (5/15)</td>
<td>[11.82%, 61.62%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CABG</td>
<td>12.50% (2/16)</td>
<td>[1.55%, 38.35%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valve Surgery</td>
<td>0.00% (0/16)</td>
<td>[0.00%, 20.59%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transplant Surgery</td>
<td>6.25% (1/16)</td>
<td>[0.16%, 30.23%]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Left Ventricular Ejection Fraction (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>23.47±7.04 (15)</td>
<td>[19.57, 27.36]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Logistic EuroScore (%)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>36.08±26.77 (16)</td>
<td>[21.82, 50.34]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 6.6  Baseline patient hemodynamics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measurements</th>
<th>RECOVER I Patients (N=16)</th>
<th>[95% CI]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Heart Rate (bpm)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>87.3±16.1 (16)</td>
<td>[78.7, 95.9]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Systolic Arterial Pressure (mmHg)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>105.4±20.4 (16)</td>
<td>[94.6, 116.3]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Diastolic Arterial Pressure (mmHg)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>61.0±13.9 (16)</td>
<td>[53.6, 68.4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mean Arterial Pressure (mmHg)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>69.3±15.0 (13)</td>
<td>[60.2, 78.4]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PCWP (mmHg)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>14.0±. (1)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SAFETY AND EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

Data for the 16 patients, who were consented for the RECOVER I study, was analyzed. The primary endpoint (survival) was met in 88% of the cases. A Kaplan-Meier curve for survival to 1 year is provided in Figure 6.16. In addition, the implant of the Impella 5.0 and the Impella LD in the RECOVER I was successful in all but one patient. The average support time was 3.7 ± 3 days, with the range of support from 1.7 days to 12.6 days. The pump provided an overall average flow during support of 3.8 ± 0.6 L/min.

There were no Unanticipated Adverse Device Effects (UADEs) over the duration of the RECOVER I trial. There were two (2) serious adverse events (SAEs) (each effecting one (1) patient), which were adjudicated by a Medical Monitor (per protocol) as being potentially device related. One SAE was an incidence of hemolysis, which fully resolved post-explant. A second SAE was an incidence of sepsis or bacteremia, which was treated with antibiotics and resolved.

Table 6.6  Baseline patient hemodynamics (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measurements</th>
<th>RECOVER I Patients (N=16)</th>
<th>[95% CI]</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PA Systolic (mmHg)</td>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>45.3±14.8 (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA Diastolic (mmHg)</td>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>26.3±10.6 (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac Index (l/min/m²)</td>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>1.6±0.4 (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVP (mmHg)</td>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>13.9±6.1 (15)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Inotropes</td>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>1.56±0.63 (16)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of Pressors</td>
<td>Mean±SD (N)</td>
<td>0.40±0.63 (15)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 6.16  Kaplan-Meier survival curve for freedom from death (to 1 year)
In addition, data was obtained to evaluate the device safety with respect to its placement across the aortic valve. A total of 50 echocardiograms available on 14 subjects were analyzed by an independent CoreLab research group. The analysis showed that there was no evidence of structural damage to the heart during use or in any subsequent follow up. These results were also submitted to FDA in the 510(k) submission for the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD (K08331), which was cleared in 2009.

Overall, the RECOVER I study demonstrated that the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD could be used in the selected patient group, resulting in:

- A high survival rate of treated patients
- A consistent and reproducible hemodynamic support
- A rapid wean of patients off of inotropes and pressors
- An excellent device safety profile with a low rate of SAEs and other device related morbidities.

**DEVICE FAILURES AND REPLACEMENTS**

There were no device failures or replacements reported during the study.

**FINANCIAL DISCLOSURE**

The Financial Disclosure by Clinical Investigators regulation (21 CFR 54) requires applicants who submit a marketing application to include certain information concerning the compensation to, and financial interests and arrangement of, any clinical investigator conducting clinical studies covered by the regulation. This clinical study included 7 investigators. Neither of the clinical investigators had disclosable financial interests/arrangements as defined in sections 54.2(a), (b), (c), and (f). The information provided does not raise any questions about the reliability of the data.
SUMMARY OF SUPPLEMENTAL CLINICAL INFORMATION

Supplemental data was provided to demonstrate safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices during use. Results from the Impella Registry for the real-world use of the Impella catheters were provided. The sponsor also provided a benchmark comparison of the Impella Registry data to a comparable registry dataset for its surgical VAD, the AB5000 Ventircle (PMA approved for a similar indication). As further evidence, a detailed literature review was provided to support the overall safety and efficacy of the Impella devices.

RESULTS

The Impella Registry is an ongoing, multi-center, retrospective, observational registry for collection of de-identified data for patients treated with the Impella 2.5, Impella CP, Impella 5.0 and Impella LD Support Systems. The registry, which was started by Abiomed in 2009, is open for participation by qualifying sites in the U.S. and Canada. Since the registry was started to date a total 59 sites have participated. As of June 30, 2015, there were 40 open sites. The sites include high and low volume centers, academic (teaching) and non-academic hospitals, public and private institutions as well as for profit and not for profit centers, almost entirely from the United States, thus providing a good representation of U.S. clinical practice. In addition, Abiomed used the Impella Registry as supporting evidence in its original PMA (P140003) application for the Impella 2.5 System. After reviewing the data, FDA stated (in the PMA’s SSED):

“Use of the device in a comparable patient group, as collected retrospectively via Abiomed’s USpella (Impella Registry) database, showed results similar to those obtained in the PROTECT II clinical trial for overall patient outcomes and hemodynamic support during use.”

The data collection from the Impella Registry includes IRB approval, complete data monitoring, adverse events (AEs) monitoring and CEC adjudication of AEs. All data is entered electronically by the sites. For this PMA, the time during which the Impella Registry data was collected is shown in Figure 6.17. Eligible patients were those who were reported in the Impella Registry, underwent open-heart surgery and required mechanical circulatory support with Impella devices within 48 hours post-surgery.

Figure 6.17  Time intervals for Impella implants data collection by type of device
Cases were initially identified using Abiomed’s commercial patient tracking system. Using this method, seventy-seven (77) Impella cases were enrolled into the U.S. Impella Registry for this analysis. These included 19 Impella 2.5 cases, 14 Impella CP cases and 44 (combined) Impella 5.0 and Impella LD cases.

The overall results (Kaplan-Meier curve estimates) for survival (to 30 days) for the patients are shown in Figure 6.18. Figure 6.19 provides the results for the different devices used. Overall outcome results appear favorable for this sick patient group, particularly when compared to the historical results for similar patients (see the benchmark and literature review sections below).

**Figure 6.18** Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival – all patients cohort

**Figure 6.19** Kaplan-Meier curve estimates for 30 day survival – for difference devices

In addition, analyses were completed using two different classification schemes. In one analysis, Classification A, the patients were categorized in three (3) different groups based on an incremental ascending risk for mortality, which were: (1) Post-cardiotomy Low Cardiac Output Syndrome (LCOS), (2) Post-cardiotomy Cardiogenic Shock (PCCS-CS) and (3) Post-cardiotomy
Failure to Wean (PCCS-FW). In the other analysis, Classification B, which was specifically requested by FDA, the patients were categorized in three (3) different groups, to evaluate separately patients that received Impella before, during the operating time (during the surgical procedure) and after the surgery. The groups included in each category are shown in Figure 6.20.

**Classification A**

- 77 PCCS cases; Impella 2.5 N=19
- Impella CP N=14
- Impella 5.0/10 N=44

**Classification B**

- 77 PCCS cases; Impella 2.5 N=19
- Impella CP N=14
- Impella 5.0/10 N=44

- Impella prior to index Procedure N=10
  - Impella 2.5 N=2
  - Impella CP N=0
  - Impella 5.0/10 N=2

- Impella during index Procedure N=54
  - Impella 2.5 N=8
  - Impella CP N=8
  - Impella 5.0/10 N=37

- Impella post index Procedure N=13
  - Impella 2.5 N=3
  - Impella CP N=5
  - Impella 5.0/10 N=2

*Figure 6.20* Groups used for each classification analysis

For Classification A, the overall results (Kaplan-Meier curve estimates) for survival (to 30 days) for the patients are shown in Figure 6.21. Figures 6.22, 6.23 and 6.24 give the results for the different devices used. The results show that high-risk patients in whom hemodynamic support is initiated early prior to surgery (LCOS group) tend to do better than those without support prior to surgery and who develop cardiogenic shock post-weaning from CPB or those who cannot wean from CPB.

*Figure 6.21* Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (all patients)
Figure 6.22  Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (patients with Impella 5.0/LD)

Figure 6.23  Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (patients with Impella CP)

Figure 6.24  Kaplan-Meier curve for 30-day survival using Classification A (patients with Impella 2.5)
For Classification B, the overall results (Kaplan-Meier curve estimates) for survival (to 30 days) for the patients are shown in Figure 6.25. Figures 6.26, 6.27 and 6.28 give the results for the different devices used. Using this classification, the trend suggest that patients with support prior to the procedure have better outcomes, which mirrors the results observed with Classification A.
The Impella Registry data provides a real-world perspective on the use of the device in routine practice in the proposed clinical setting for the Impella devices. Although some limitations exist with respect to the interpretation of some of the data, the Impella Registry data showed the following:

- Patients that require hemodynamic support in the setting of PCCS are sick and present with a broad spectrum of pre-existing co-morbidities and risk factors
- The overall outcomes are favorable
- Despite the limited sample size, the data suggests that Impella 5.0 and Impella LD patients do somewhat better than Impella 2.5 (in the proposed clinical setting)

In order to provide a benchmark for the Impella devices in a comparable clinical setting, Abiomed analyzed the results from its real-world registry for the AB5000 Ventricle. The AB5000 Ventricle was PMA approved (P900023/S038) in 2003 as a temporary VAD for use to treat PCCS. The AB5000 Registry was a retrospective registry, which included data collected from U.S. sites between October 3, 2003 and December 11, 2007. The AB5000 Registry included IRB approval and data for demographics, procedural and hemodynamic characteristics, outcomes and adverse events.

To better match the two cohorts, AB5000 patients who either received bi-ventricular or right ventricular support were excluded from the benchmark analysis. The AB5000 Registry included 1234 patients (387 of which received only LVAD). Of those patients, 89 were classified as PCCS patients; however, only 79 cases had enough data to confirm the severity of the presentation (to serve as the AB5000 benchmark cohort against the Impella Registry cohort). The Impella Registry benchmark included Impella 5.0/LD patients that presented either with PCCS-CS or PCCS-FW. The LCOS patients were excluded from the Impella cohort so the analysis is conservative (considering the invasiveness of the AB5000, it is very unlikely that it (i.e., the AB5000) was used for LCOS patients). The Impella 2.5 and Impella CP patients were also excluded because it was felt that both the AB5000 and the Impella 5.0/LD provide full flow (as opposed to the Impella 2.5 and Impella CP) that provides partial flow. The selection of cases for the benchmark comparison is provided schematically in Figure 6.29.
The benchmark analysis included the overall survival to 30 days and to discharge in the PCCS. The 30 day Kaplan-Meier estimates are provided in Figure 6.30. For the survival to discharge, the Impella survival rate (50%) was statistically higher than the AB5000 survival (15%, p=0.002), as shown in Table 6.7.
Table 6.7  Site-reported adverse events (to discharge) by classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>In-Hospital Adverse Events</th>
<th>Impella 5.0/LD Patients (n=24)</th>
<th>AB5000 Patients (n=79)</th>
<th>p-value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Death</td>
<td>50.00% (12/24)</td>
<td>84.81% (67/79)</td>
<td>0.002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CVA/Stroke</td>
<td>4.17% (1/24)</td>
<td>20.25% (16/79)</td>
<td>0.112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TIA</td>
<td>0.00% (0/24)</td>
<td>2.53% (2/79)</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute Renal Dysfunction/Failure</td>
<td>41.67% (10/24)</td>
<td>29.11% (23/79)</td>
<td>0.318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hemolysis</td>
<td>8.33% (2/24)</td>
<td>6.33% (5/79)</td>
<td>0.663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute Hepatic Failure</td>
<td>16.67% (4/24)</td>
<td>18.99% (15/79)</td>
<td>1.000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bleeding</td>
<td>45.83% (11/24)</td>
<td>41.77% (33/79)</td>
<td>0.815</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>37.50% (9/24)</td>
<td>22.78% (18/79)</td>
<td>0.187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supraventricular Arrhythmia</td>
<td>12.50% (3/24)</td>
<td>7.59% (6/79)</td>
<td>0.432</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory Dysfunction/Failure</td>
<td>33.33% (8/24)</td>
<td>17.72% (14/79)</td>
<td>0.153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepsis</td>
<td>4.17% (1/24)</td>
<td>0.00% (0/79)</td>
<td>0.068</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi System Organ Failure</td>
<td>8.33% (2/24)</td>
<td>35.44% (28/79)</td>
<td>0.010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>29.17% (7/24)</td>
<td>45.57% (36/79)</td>
<td>0.167</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CVA: Cerebrovascular accident; TIA: Transient Ischemic Attack

In addition, the rates of site-reported in-hospital adverse events, which were captured in both registry CRFs, were compared. The results of this comparison are provided in Table 6.7. Of note, the rate of multi-system organ failure was lower in the Impella Registry PCCS group and the stroke rate was also numerically lower compared with the AB5000 PCCS benchmark cohort. The other site-reported adverse events including bleeding, hemolysis and infection were comparable between the two cohorts. Given the clinical presentation of these patients (all undergoing major cardiac surgery), similar bleeding and infection rates are expected.

Overall, Abiomed’s benchmark analysis revealed that post-cardiotomy patients in the Impella Registry are comparable with the post-cardiotomy patients treated with the AB5000 device. Although the devices provided similar amount of circulatory support, it appears that the patients in the Impella Registry had better outcomes than the patients in the AB5000 Registry.
HEMODYNAMIC EFFECTIVENESS RESULTS

The Impella Catheters directly unload the left ventricle (LV) and propel blood forward, from the left ventricle into the aorta, in a manner most consistent with normal physiology. Impella provides both an active forward flow and systemic aortic pressure (AOP) contribution, leading to an effective increase in mean arterial pressure (MAP) and overall cardiac power output (CPO). Combined with LV unloading, Impella support reduces end-diastolic volume and pressure (EDV, EDP) and augments peak coronary flow, leading to a favorable alteration of the balance of myocardial oxygen supply and demand. This cascade of hemodynamic effects has been described in the literature and validated in computational modeling and a variety of pre-clinical and clinical studies.

For the RECOVER I study (see above), hemodynamic data was collected at baseline and over time to evaluate the robustness of the hemodynamic support with the Impella 5.0 and Impella LD devices in patients experiencing hemodynamic compromise or cardiogenic shock post cardiac surgery. The data collected showed an immediate improvement of the hemodynamics of PCCS patients post device implant, as shown in Figure 6.30. In addition, concomitantly, as patients’ hemodynamics improved, a rapid and sustained weaning of inotropic and pressor support was also observed, which is shown in Figure 6.31.

Figure 6.31 Improvement in patient hemodynamics (from baseline to 48 hr post-device implant) for RECOVER I patients
Figure 6.32 Decrease in inotropes and pressors (post-device placement) for RECOVER I patients

Additional prospective clinical study data was provided to demonstrate a similar hemodynamic effect for the Impella 2.5 device.

**LITERATURE REVIEW**

The literature review provided has three different components. The first is a review and characterization of the use of Impella in post-cardiotomy shock. The second is a review of the BVS/AB5000 in the same patient population as this device has FDA approved for this indication. The third is a review of ECMO in this population as ECMO, even though off-label, is used as an alternate device to support these patients as well.

The Impella review encompasses a large body of scientific evidence with over 230 publications totaling over 2537 patients for the use of Impella devices. Included in this Impella PCCS analysis 223 patients treated for the proposed indications for use. The literature review provides further insight into the use of the Impella devices in routine clinical practice. The literature analysis shows that post-surgical patients, who are deemed to require urgent hemodynamic support, are in general old and present with high-risk features and co-morbidities, poor functional status and greatly depressed cardiac function. The use of Impella devices to support these patients generally appears to be safe and effective in these studies published in the literature. Also the survival rates and morbidity profiles appear to be favorable for use of the Impella as compared to surgical VADs.

Likewise, the review of ECMO in these same patients yielded a mean survival to either discharge of 30 days at 33.9% (range 8% to 53%) representing 14 studies and over 1400 patients. ECMO is a much more invasive system and more complex to use yielding a higher morbidity profile than Impella. Overall, the literature analysis provides further reasonable assurance of safety and effectiveness of the Impella devices in the proposed indications for use.
7 PATIENT MANAGEMENT TOPICS

PATIENT MANAGEMENT OVERVIEW .............................................................. 7.1
GENERAL PATIENT CARE CONSIDERATIONS ........................................ 7.1
TRANSPORT WITHIN THE HOSPITAL ...................................................... 7.2
RIGHT HEART FAILURE ........................................................................... 7.2
ECG INTERFERENCE .................................................................................. 7.3
LATEX ........................................................................................................ 7.3

USE OF ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY FOR POSITIONING OF THE IMPLELLA® CATHETER ................................................................. 7.3

Background ................................................................................................. 7.3
Correct Impella® Catheter Position .............................................................. 7.5
Impella® Catheter Too Far into the Left Ventricle ........................................ 7.5
Impella® Catheter Inlet in the Aorta ............................................................. 7.6
Impella® Catheter in Papillary Muscle ......................................................... 7.6
Color Doppler Echocardiography ............................................................... 7.9
Post-insertion Positioning (PIP) Checklist .................................................. 7.10

UNDERSTANDING AND MANAGING IMPLELLA® CATHETER POSITION ALARMS ................................................................. 7.10

Correct Position .......................................................................................... 7.11
Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter Fully in Ventricle ................................ 7.12
Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter Completely in the Aorta or Inlet and Outlet Areas In Ventricle and Open Pressure Area in Aorta .......................................................... 7.13
Low Native Heart Pulsatility (Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP®) ....................... 7.14
Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter Outlet Area on or near Aortic Valve ........ 7.14
Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter Position Wrong .............................................. 7.15
Low Native Heart Pulsatility (Impella® 5.0 and LD) ....................................... 7.16
Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter Outlet Area on or near Aortic Valve ................. 7.17

IMPELLA STOPPED ..................................................................................... 7.18

SUCTION ..................................................................................................... 7.18

Suction with the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter ................................... 7.18
Suction with the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter ............................................. 7.19

Continued on next page
HEMOLYSIS.............................................................................................................. 7.19

OPERATING THE IMPELLA® CATHETER WITHOUT HEPARIN IN THE PURGE SOLUTION.............................................................................................................. 7.21

PLACEMENT SIGNAL LUMEN (FOR IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)...... 7.21

Background ........................................................................................................... 7.21
Flush Solution Change Out Procedure ................................................................. 7.22

PRESSURE SENSOR DRIFT AND SENSOR FAILURE (FOR IMPELLA® 5.0 AND LD)................................................................................................................. 7.23

Manually Zeroing the Differential Pressure Sensor .......................................... 7.23
Sensor Failure and Effects on Flow Calculations ................................................. 7.23
Sensor Failure and Effects on Position Control ................................................... 7.23
Suction Detection During Sensor Drift or Sensor Failure ................................. 7.24

ENABLING PURGE FLOW NOTIFICATIONS......................................................... 7.24

DISABLING AUDIO FOR PLACEMENT SIGNAL LUMEN BLOCKED ALARM (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®) ........................................................................... 7.24

SURGICAL MODE.................................................................................................... 7.25

TIMED DATA RECORDING....................................................................................... 7.25

OPERATING THE IMPELLA® CATHETER IN ELECTROMAGNETIC FIELDS .... 7.26

Electroanatomic Mapping (EAM) Systems ......................................................... 7.26
Magnetic Navigation Systems (MNS) ................................................................. 7.27

TRANSFERRING FROM THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER TO A NEW AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER..................................................... 7.28

Transfer Steps ..................................................................................................... 7.28
Patient Management Checklist following Transfer of Support ......................... 7.28

EMERGENCY SHUTDOWN PROCEDURE .......................................................... 7.29
PATIENT MANAGEMENT OVERVIEW

The information and instructions in this section of the manual are not intended to supersede established medical procedures concerning patient care. Best practice, as determined by the medical community, should always be observed. In each case, the clinician must determine whether the application of information provided is appropriate for the particular clinical setting.

GENERAL PATIENT CARE CONSIDERATIONS

- Use knee immobilizer as needed to maintain access site straight.
- Access site management should be done in accordance with hospital protocol, using aseptic technique.
- Assess access site for bleeding and hematoma.
- Monitor pedal pulses.
- To prevent the purge tubing from kinking, do not allow the red Impella® plug to hang freely from the catheter and do not bend the catheter near the red Impella® plug.
- Consider attaching the red Impella® plug and catheter to a short armboard to prevent the catheter from kinking near the plug.
- When transferring a patient with the device in place:
  - Be careful not to pull on the Impella® Catheter when transferring a patient from one bed to another.
  - Do not raise the head of the bed to higher than a 30-degree angle.
  - Use care when moving or turning a patient; the Impella® Catheter may move out of position and cause a positioning alarm.
TRANSPORT WITHIN THE HOSPITAL

Patients supported with the Impella® Catheter may require transfer from the OR or cath lab into the ICU setting with the device in place. Considerations for transport within the hospital include the following:

- The Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® Catheter are designed to operate on battery power for at least 1 hour.
- Confirm that the battery capacity displayed on the controller is 100%.
- If transport time might be longer than 1 hour, bring an extension cord or confirm that you will be able to connect the controller to AC power once you arrive at your destination.
- When rolling the Automated Impella® Controller cart across a threshold, firmly grasp the cart handle and pull it over the threshold.
- Pay close attention to all system components and connections when rolling the Automated Impella® Controller cart over thresholds and through elevator doors.
- Do not stress the connector cable from the controller to the Impella® Catheter.

RIGHT HEART FAILURE

Caregivers should monitor patients being supported by the Impella® Catheter for signs of right heart failure:

- Reduced output from the Impella® Catheter
- Suction alarms
- Elevated filling pressures (CVP)
- Signs of liver failure
- Elevated pulmonary pressures

If the patient is exhibiting signs of right heart failure, the clinical team should assess the need for a more durable form of support.
**ECG INTERFERENCE**

Operating the Automated Impella® Controller may cause interference with electrocardiogram (ECG) signals. Please check the electrode pads and leads for good fixation and contact. If interference persists, activate the 50/100 Hz band-elimination filter or the 60/120 Hz band-elimination filter (also known as notch filter) on your ECG device. The filter frequency will be based on the AC power frequency for the country in which you are operating the equipment.

If your ECG device does not have the appropriate filters, disconnect the Automated Impella® Controller temporarily from AC power to obtain an undisturbed signal. Please observe the battery status while running the Automated Impella® Controller on battery power.

**LATEX**

The Automated Impella® Controller and Impella® Catheters, including all accessories, are not made with natural rubber latex.

**USE OF ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY FOR POSITIONING OF THE IMPELLA® CATHETER**

**BACKGROUND**

Echocardiography is a commonly used tool for evaluating the position of the Impella® Catheter relative to the aortic valve and other intraventricular structures post-placement. The best echocardiographic views for positioning the Impella® Catheter in the left ventricle are a long axis transesophageal echocardiogram (TEE) or a parasternal long axis transthoracic echocardiogram (TTE). These long axis views allow you to see both the aortic valve and Impella® Catheter inlet area.

Evaluate the position of the Impella® Catheter if the Automated Impella® Controller displays position alarms or if you observe lower than expected flows or signs of hemolysis. If the catheter does not appear to be correctly positioned, initiate steps to reposition it.

The illustrations on the following page identify the structures you would expect to see in transesophageal echocardiography (top) and transthoracic echocardiography (bottom). In these illustrations, the Impella® Catheter is positioned correctly; however, these depictions are stylized and in actual echocardiograms the pigtail and inlet and outlet areas may not be seen as distinctly. The graphics in this section depict the Impella® 2.5 Catheter, but are representative of positioning for the Impella CP® and Impella® 5.0 as well. Positioning for the Impella® LD Catheter would also look similar but without the pigtail.
Figure 7.1 Labeled TEE and TTE Images of the Impella® Catheter Position
Four Impella® Catheter positions you are likely to encounter when examining echocardiograms from patients supported with the Impella® Catheter include:

- Correct Impella® Catheter position
- Impella® Catheter too far into the left ventricle
- Impella® Catheter inlet in the aorta
- Impella® Catheter in papillary muscle

The following pages describe each situation. Figure 7.2 illustrates a transesophageal echocardiogram (TEE) of each situation. Figure 7.3 illustrates a transthoracic echocardiogram (TTE) of each.

**CORRECT IMPELLA® CATHETER POSITION**

For optimal positioning of the Impella® Catheter, the inlet area of the catheter should be 3.5 cm below the aortic valve annulus and well away from papillary muscle and subannular structures. The outlet area should be well above the aortic valve. If the Impella® Catheter is correctly positioned, echocardiography will likely show the following, as depicted in Figures 7.2a (TEE) and 7.3a (TTE):

- Catheter inlet area 3.5 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area well above the aortic valve (frequently not visible on TEE or TTE images)
- Catheter angled toward the left ventricular apex away from the heart wall and not curled up or blocking the mitral valve

**IMPELLA® CATHETER TOO FAR INTO THE LEFT VENTRICLE**

If the Impella® Catheter is positioned too far into the left ventricle, the patient will not receive the benefit of Impella® Catheter support. Blood will enter the inlet area and exit the outlet area within the ventricle. Obstruction of the Impella® Catheter inlet area can lead to increased mechanical forces on blood cell walls and subsequent hemolysis, which often presents as dark or blood-colored urine. If the Impella® Catheter is too far into the left ventricle, echocardiography will likely show the following, as depicted in Figures 7.2b (TEE) and 7.3b (TTE):

- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area across or near the aortic valve
**IMPELLA® CATHETER INLET IN THE AORTA**

If the inlet area of the Impella® Catheter is in the aorta, the patient will not receive the benefit of Impella® Catheter support. The catheter will pull blood from the aorta rather than the left ventricle. In addition, suction is possible if the inlet area is against the wall of the aorta or valve sinus. If the inlet area of the Impella® Catheter is in the aorta, echocardiography will likely show the following, as depicted in Figures 7.2c (TEE) and 7.3c (TTE):

- Catheter inlet area in aorta or near the aortic valve
- Catheter pigtail too close to the mitral valve

**IMPELLA® CATHETER IN PAPILLARY MUSCLE**

If the inlet area of the Impella® Catheter is too close to or entangled in the papillary muscle and/or subannular structures surrounding the mitral valve, it can affect mitral valve function and negatively impact catheter flow. If the inlet area of the catheter is lodged adjacent to the papillary muscle, the inflow may be obstructed, resulting in suction alarms. This positioning is also likely to place the outlet area too close to the aortic valve, which can cause outflow at the level of the aortic valve with blood streaming back into the ventricle, resulting in turbulent flow and hemolysis. If the Impella® Catheter is too close to or entangled in the papillary muscle, echocardiography will likely show the following, as depicted in Figures 7.2d (TEE) and 7.3d (TTE):

- Catheter pigtail in papillary muscle
- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve or lodged between papillary muscle and the myocardial wall
- Catheter outlet area too close to the aortic valve

The following figures depict transesophageal and transthoracic echocardiographic images of these four Impella® Catheter positions. Figure 7.2 shows four transesophageal depictions of Impella® Catheter position and Figure 7.3 shows four transthoracic depictions of Impella® Catheter position.
Impella Ventricular Support Systems for Use During Cardiogenic Shock

**a. Correct Impella® Catheter Position (TEE)**
- Catheter inlet area 3.5 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area well above the aortic valve
- Catheter angled toward the left ventricular apex away from the heart wall and not curled up or blocking the mitral valve

**b. Impella® Catheter Too Far into Left Ventricle (TEE)**
- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area across or near the aortic valve

**c. Impella® Catheter Inlet in Aorta (TEE)**
- Catheter inlet area in aorta or near the aortic valve
- Catheter pigtail too close to the mitral valve

**d. Impella® Catheter in Papillary Muscle (TEE)**
- Catheter pigtail in papillary muscle
- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve or lodged between papillary muscle and the myocardial wall
- Catheter outlet area too close to the aortic valve

*Figure 7.2 Transesophageal Echocardiographic (TEE) Illustrations of Impella® Catheter Position*
a. **Correct Impella® Catheter Position (TTE)**
- Catheter inlet area 3.5 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area well above the aortic valve
- Catheter angled toward the left ventricular apex away from the heart wall and not curled up or blocking the mitral valve

b. **Impella® Catheter Too Far into Left Ventricle (TTE)**
- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve
- Catheter outlet area across or near the aortic valve

c. **Impella® Catheter Inlet in Aorta (TTE)**
- Catheter inlet area in aorta or near the aortic valve
- Catheter pigtail too close to the mitral valve

d. **Impella® Catheter in Papillary Muscle (TTE)**
- Catheter pigtail in papillary muscle
- Catheter inlet area more than 4 cm below the aortic valve or lodged between papillary muscle and the myocardial wall
- Catheter outlet area too close to the aortic valve

*Figure 7.3 Transthoracic Echocardiographic (TTE) Illustrations of Impella® Catheter Position*
COLOR DOPPLER ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY

When moving a patient supported with an Impella® Catheter, it is important to monitor catheter migration. Adding color Doppler to an echo is another way to verify catheter position. If the Impella® Catheter is correctly positioned, a dense mosaic pattern of turbulence will appear above the aortic valve near the outlet area of the catheter, as shown in the top image in Figure 7.4. If, however, the echocardiogram reveals a dense mosaic pattern of turbulence beneath the aortic valve (bottom image in Figure 7.4), this likely indicates that the outlet area of the catheter is in the wrong position, that is, the catheter is too far into the ventricle or entangled in papillary muscle. (Note: If using transesophageal echocardiography [TEE], look for the mosaic patterns in the same locations relative to the aortic valve and Impella® Catheter outlet area.)

Figure 7.4 Correct and Incorrect Impella® Catheter Position (Color Doppler TTE)
POST-INSERTION POSITIONING (PIP) CHECKLIST

Completing the steps shown in the following post-insertion positioning checklist can help to ensure proper position of the Impella® Catheter following insertion. Pay particular attention to positioning after the patient is moved from the operating room or catheterization laboratory.

1. Remove slack in the Impella® Catheter by increasing P-level to AUTO or P-8 (or P-9 for the Impella® 5.0 or LD) and align the catheter against the lesser curvature of the aorta (rather than the greater curvature).

2. Use fluoroscopy to verify that the slack has been removed.

3. Verify that the Impella® Catheter inlet area is optimally positioned 3.5 cm below the aortic valve.

4. Return to previous P-level.

5. Secure the Impella® Catheter at a firm external fixation point in the groin area.

UNDERSTANDING AND MANAGING IMPELLA® CATHETER POSITION ALARMS

The Automated Impella® Controller continuously monitors the catheter based on the placement signal and the motor current.

- Placement signal: Is the signal characteristic of aortic or ventricular pressure (for Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP®)? Is it pulsatile or flattened (for Impella® 5.0 or LD)?

- Motor current: Is the signal “pulsatile” or “flattened”?

If the system alarms with one of the positioning alarms described in this section, fluoroscopic imaging is the best method for confirming position. You can also use TEE, TTE, or a standard chest x-ray.

If the Impella® Catheter is either partly (just the pigtail) or completely in the ventricle, reposition the catheter under imaging guidance.

If the Impella® Catheter is completely out of the ventricle, do not attempt to reposition the catheter across the valve without a guidewire.

The following pages describe possible placement conditions and the associated signal characteristics and alarm messages as well as actions to take for each.
**CORRECT POSITION**

If the Impella® Catheter is in the correct position, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.5 for the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® and Figure 7.6 for the Impella® 5.0 and LD.

**Figure 7.5** Correct Impella CP® Catheter Position (similar for Impella® 2.5)

**Figure 7.6** Correct Impella® 5.0 Catheter Position (similar for Impella® LD)

**Restoring Placement Signal Quality**

You may get a sensor or position alarm if you pinch the white flush valve to restore placement signal quality.
IMPELLA® 2.5 OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER FULLY IN VENTRICLE

If the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter is fully in the ventricle, the following alarm will appear:

**Impella Position In Ventricle**

In this situation, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.7.

---

**Yellow Flow Rate**

*If the Automated Impella® Controller detects incorrect or unknown catheter position, or if placement monitoring is suspended, the flow rate in the flow area appears in yellow as shown in Figure 7.7.*

---

**Figure 7.7  Impella CP® Catheter Fully in Ventricle (similar for Impella® 2.5)**

Actions to take:

1. Under fluoroscopic guidance, reduce the P-level to P-2 and carefully pull back the Impella® Catheter until the aortic waveform signal is showing.
2. When you see the aortic waveform signal, pull the catheter back an additional 4 cm.
**IMPELLA® 2.5 OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER COMPLETELY IN THE AORTA or INLET AND OUTLET AREAS IN VENTRICLE AND OPEN PRESSURE AREA IN AORTA**

If the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter is completely in the aorta or if the inlet and outlet areas are in the ventricle and the open pressure area is in the aorta, the following alarm will appear:

**Impella Position Wrong**

In this situation, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.8.

![Figure 7.8 Impella CP® Catheter Completely in the Aorta or Inlet and Outlet Areas in Ventricle and Open Pressure Area in Aorta (similar for Impella® 2.5)](image)

Actions to take:

1. Under fluoroscopic guidance, determine the Impella® Catheter position.
2. Reduce the P-level to P-2 and reposition the catheter as necessary.
LOW NATIVE HEART PULSATILITY (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

When a patient has poor native ventricular function, the placement signal may remain pulsatile; however, the amplitude will be dampened.

In a situation of low native heart pulsatility, the Automated Impella® Controller may not be able to determine the catheter position. You may see the following indication on the home screen:

Impella Position Unknown

In this situation, the screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.9.

![Impella Position Unknown](image)

Figure 7.9 Impella CP® Catheter Position Unknown (similar for Impella® 2.5)

Actions to take:

1. Assess cardiac function.

IMPELLA® 2.5 OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER OUTLET AREA ON OR NEAR AORTIC VALVE

If the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter outlet area is on or near the aortic valve, the catheter may be too deep in the ventricle.

Actions to take:

1. Assess and adjust Impella® Catheter position under fluoroscopic guidance.
2. If unsuccessful, reduce the P-level to P-2 and gently pull the catheter back 2 cm to see if the condition resolves.
**IMPELLA® 5.0 OR LD CATHETER POSITION WRONG**

If the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is fully in the ventricle or fully in the aorta, the following alarm will appear:

**Impella Position Wrong**

The Impella® 5.0 or LD System cannot differentiate between these two conditions. In this situation, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.10.

![Impella Placement Screen](image)

**Figure 7.10 Impella® 5.0 Catheter Position Wrong (similar for Impella® LD)**

Actions to take:

1. Under fluoroscopic or echocardiographic guidance, determine the catheter position.
2. Reduce P-level to P-2 and reposition the catheter by either pushing the catheter forward or pulling it back as needed. Confirm that the placement signal and motor current are both pulsatile.
3. If fluoroscopic or echocardiographic imaging is not available, obtain imaging equipment (fluoroscopy, echocardiography, or chest x-ray) to check the catheter position.
LOW NATIVE HEART PULSATILITY (IMPELLA® 5.0 AND LD)

When a patient has poor native ventricular function, the placement signal may remain pulsatile; however, the amplitude will be dampened and both the minimum and maximum values will be greater than zero because the aortic valve does not open and the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter raises the aortic blood pressure above the ventricular pressure during systole.

In a situation of low native heart pulsatility, the Automated Impella® Controller may not be able to determine the catheter position. You may see the following indication on the home screen:

**Impella Position Unknown**

In this situation, the screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.11. Notice that the flow rate is displayed in yellow in the lower left corner of the screen, indicating that the patient may not be getting the benefit of the displayed flow rate.

![Impella Position Unknown](image)

*Figure 7.11  Impella® 5.0 Catheter Position Unknown (similar for Impella® LD)*

Actions to take:

1. Assess cardiac function.
2. If needed, confirm catheter position with echocardiography.
IMPELLA® 5.0 OR LD CATHETER OUTLET AREA ON OR NEAR AORTIC VALVE

If the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter outlet area is on or near the aortic valve, the catheter may be too deep in the ventricle. The following alarm will appear:

**Impella Outflow Blocked**

In this situation, the placement screen will appear as shown in Figure 7.12.

![Figure 7.12  Impella® 5.0 Catheter Outlet Area on or near Aortic Valve (similar for Impella® LD)](image)

**Actions to take:**

1. Assess and adjust Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter position under fluoroscopic or echocardiographic guidance, if available.

2. If fluoroscopic or echocardiographic guidance is not available, reduce the P-level to P-2 and gently pull the catheter back 2 cm to see if the condition resolves.
IMPELLA STOPPED

If the Impella® Catheter has stopped suddenly:

1. Try to restart the catheter at P-8.
2. If the Impella® does not restart at P-8, try to restart at P-2.
3. If the Impella® does not restart or stops again, wait 1 minute and try to restart again.
4. If the Impella® restarts, wean down to P-2 as the patient can tolerate. Under these circumstances, catheter function is not reliable and the Impella® may stop again.
5. If the Impella® does not restart, remove the Impella® from the ventricle as soon as possible to avoid aortic insufficiency.

SUCTION

Suction may occur if the blood volume available for the Impella® Catheter is inadequate or restricted. Suction limits the amount of support that the Impella® Catheter can provide to the patient and results in a decrease in arterial pressure and cardiac output. It can damage blood cells, leading to hemolysis. It may also be an indicator of right heart failure.

SUCTION WITH THE IMPELLA® 2.5 OR IMPELLA CP® CATHETER

If the Automated Impella® Controller detects suction while running in AUTO mode, it automatically reduces motor speed to lower the flow rate to resolve the suction and displays the “Impella Flow Reduced” advisory alarm. If the suction is cleared, the controller returns the flow rate to the desired setting. If suction is still detected at the lowest motor speed, the controller displays the “Suction” alarm.

If the “Suction” or “Impella Flow Reduced” alarm occurs during Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® support, follow the recommended actions:

1. Check the Impella® Catheter for correct positioning using imaging. Reposition the catheter by rotating or moving it into or out of the ventricle slightly. Either or both of these actions could help move the inlet of the Impella® Catheter away from the interior ventricular wall.
2. Ensure patient has adequate volume.
3. Confirm right ventricular function by assessing CVP or right side function with echocardiography or fluoroscopy. If CVP is not an option, check the pulmonary artery diastolic pressure to assess the patient volume status.
4. Return P-level to pre-alarm setting.
If the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® Catheter has sudden low flows or suction at startup:

1. Remove the catheter from the patient and ensure that ACT is 250 seconds or above.
2. Closely inspect the inlet and outlet areas and remove any thrombus or other foreign materials.
3. If materials have been removed, run the Impella® at P-8 or AUTO in a basin.
4. If flows are still above 2.2 L/min, reinsert the Impella® Catheter into the patient.
5. If no material is visible or if the flows are still low, there could be a clot inside the device. An assessment (fluoroscopic or echocardiography) of the left ventricle is recommended to rule out left ventricular thrombus before inserting another device.

**SUCTION WITH THE IMPELLA® 5.0 OR LD CATHETER**

If the “Suction” alarm occurs during support with the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter, follow the recommended actions:

1. Reduce P-level by 1 or 2 levels to reduce the effects of suction.
2. Check the Impella® Catheter for correct positioning using imaging. Reposition the catheter by rotating or moving it into or out of the ventricle slightly. Either or both of these actions could help move the inlet of the Impella® Catheter away from the interior ventricular wall.
3. Assess patient’s fluid intake and output to confirm adequate volume status.
4. Confirm right ventricular function by assessing CVP or right side function with echocardiography. If CVP is not an option, check the pulmonary artery diastolic pressure to assess the patient volume status.
5. Return the P-level to pre-alarm setting.

**HEMOLYSIS**

When blood is pumped, it is subjected to mechanical forces. Depending on the strength of the blood cells and the amount of force applied, the cells may be damaged, allowing hemoglobin to enter the plasma. Pumping forces can be generated by a variety of medical procedures including heart lung bypass, hemodialysis, or ventricular assist device (VAD) support. Patient conditions—including catheter position, pre-existing medical conditions, and small left ventricular volumes—may also play a role in patient susceptibility to hemolysis.

Hemolysis should be monitored during support. Patients who develop high levels of hemolysis may show signs of decreased hemoglobin levels, dark or blood-colored urine, and in some cases, acute renal failure. Plasma-free hemoglobin (PfHgb) is the best indicator to confirm whether a patient is exposed to an unacceptable level of hemolysis.

Management technique may differ depending on the underlying cause of hemolysis. Table 7.1 provides guidance for various circumstances.
**Table 7.1  Guide for Managing Hemolysis in Various Circumstances**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Condition</th>
<th>Controller Indicators</th>
<th>Clinical Indicators</th>
<th>Management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Impella® inlet area in close proximity to intraventricular wall | • “Impella Flow Reduced” or “Suction” alarms | Imaging (see note) | • Reposition the catheter by rotating or moving the catheter into or out of the ventricle slightly. Either or both of these actions could help move the inlet of the catheter away from the intraventricular wall.  
• If repositioning will be delayed, reduce the P-level if tolerated by patient hemodynamics. Return to the previous P-level after repositioning.  
• Reassess position after flow rate has returned to desired target value. |
| Wrong pump position | • Position alarms with higher than expected flows  
• “Impella Flow Reduced” or “Suction” alarms with lower than expected flows  
• Pump outlet blocked alarms | Imaging (see note) | • Reposition the catheter by rotating or moving the catheter into or out of the ventricle slightly. Either or both of these actions could help move the inlet of the catheter away from the intraventricular wall.  
• If repositioning will be delayed, reduce the P-level if tolerated by patient hemodynamics. Return to the previous P-level after repositioning.  
• Reassess position after flow rate has returned to desired target value. |
| Higher than needed flow setting | • There may be no controller indicators  
• “Impella Flow Reduced” or “Suction” alarms | Normal hemodynamics  
• Native recovery | • Reduce P-level until patient pressure starts to drop.  
• Slowly increase P-level. |
| Inadequate filling volume | • Position alarms  
• “Impella Flow Reduced” or “Suction” alarms  
• Lower than expected flows | • Low CVP  
• Low PCWP  
• Low AOP  
• High PA pressures  
• Right heart failure  
• High urine output  
• Increased bleeding or chest tube drainage | • Reduce the P-level if tolerated by patient hemodynamics.  
• Correct I and O balance.  
• Consider giving volume; additional volume will expand the end systolic ventricular volume.  
• Reduce PA pressure.  
• Improve right heart function. |
| Pre-existing patient conditions or other medical procedures | N/A | Patient past medical history  
• Current procedures or treatments | |

**Note on imaging:** All imaging technology represents the anatomy in two dimensions (2D). It is not possible to assess the interactions between the catheter and the intraventricular anatomy that occur in three dimensions (3D). Abiomed strongly recommends that the catheter be repositioned, even if the imaging view shows correct position.
OPERATING THE IMPELLA® CATHETER WITHOUT HEPARIN IN THE PURGE SOLUTION

The Impella® Catheter is designed to be operated with a purge solution that contains heparin. Operation of the system without heparin in the purge solution has not been tested. In the event that a patient is intolerant to heparin, due to heparin-induced thrombocytopenia (HIT) or bleeding, physicians should use their clinical judgment to assess the risks versus benefits of operating the Impella® System without heparin.

If it is in the best interest of the patient to operate the system without heparin, the dextrose solution is still required, and physicians should consider systemic delivery of an alternative anticoagulant. DO NOT add any alternative anticoagulant (such as a direct thrombin inhibitor) to the purge fluid. The Impella® Catheter has not been tested with any alternative anticoagulants in the purge solution.

PLACEMENT SIGNAL LUMEN (FOR IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

BACKGROUND

The Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters use a fluid-filled pressure lumen with an inlet at the proximal end of the motor housing and the pressure sensor located in the red Impella® plug. The Automated Impella® Controller software monitors both the pressure waveform characteristics and motor current to determine the placement of the Impella® Catheter inlet and outlet areas relative to the aortic valve.

Table 7.2 provides recommended standards for maintaining the placement signal.
Table 7.2 Recommended Standards for Maintenance of the Placement Signal for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Periodic flushing of the placement signal lumen.</td>
<td>Note: Either of these actions may result in sensor or position alarms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slight dampening</td>
<td>If you observe a dampened placement signal, pinch the white flush valve located on the red sidearm for a few seconds to restore the placement signal quality.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Severe or lost pressure | 1. Close the roller clamp and disconnect the IV tubing connected to the red pressure sidearm.  
2. Connect a syringe of saline to the port and squeeze the white flow valve as you draw negative pressure.  
3. Continue aspiration of the port until blood is visualized in the syringe.  
4. Disconnect the syringe and open the roller clamp until slow drips of saline exit the tubing.  
5. Flood the open port of the red pressure sidearm and then reconnect.  
6. Squeeze the white wings of the flow valve for 15 to 20 seconds to flush the pressure lumen to remove all blood from the pressure lumen. |
| Pressure bag inflation pressure | Maintaining pressure bag inflation pressure between 300 mmHg and 350 mmHg. |

**FLUSH SOLUTION CHANGE OUT PROCEDURE**

1. Prime the new NaCl flush solution setup and close the roller clamp.
2. Place the NaCl bag in a pressure bag and inflate to between 300 mmHg and 350 mmHg.
3. Close the roller clamp and disconnect the old flush solution connected at the red sidearm port.
4. Open the roller clamp on the new flush solution setup until you get a slow drip.
5. Position the male luer connector over the female luer connector and fill to overflow, displacing any air, as shown in Figure 7.13.

*Figure 7.13 Displacing Air During Flush Solution Change Out Procedure*
6. Connect and secure luer fittings.

7. Fully open the roller clamp and squeeze the white wings for approximately 5 to 10 seconds to complete the internal prime. This final prime should eliminate any risk of lost or dampened pressure caused by blood tracking into the pressure lumen during the pressure tubing change.

**PRESSURE SENSOR DRIFT AND PLACEMENT SIGNAL NOT RELIABLE (FOR IMPELLA® 5.0 AND LD)**

**MANUALLY ZEROING THE DIFFERENTIAL PRESSURE SENSOR**

The electrical signal produced by the differential pressure sensor may drift over time. If you observe that the placement waveform has shifted up or down on the display, or the expected flow does not match the current P-level setting, zero the differential pressure sensor by performing the following steps:

1. Press the MENU key and select “Start Manual Zero.”
2. Select OK to confirm the decrease in P-level.
3. The controller displays “Wait until the new P-level is reached” and then “Calculation is running.”
4. Select OK to accept the new setting when the controller displays the “Placement Signal Offset Adjust finished!” message.
5. The Impella® will automatically be reset to the previous P-level.

**PLACEMENT SIGNAL NOT RELIABLE AND EFFECTS ON FLOW CALCULATIONS**

If the pressure sensor fails, the controller can no longer calculate the flow rate. The controller displays a triangle with “Flow Calculation Disabled.” The screen displays a yellow question mark over the heart icon and “Placement Monitoring Suspended.”

To silence this alarm, go to MENU and select SETTINGS/SERVICE.

**PLACEMENT SIGNAL NOT RELIABLE AND EFFECTS ON POSITION CONTROL**

If the pressure sensor fails, placement monitoring is switched off because it is not possible to display the position of the catheter. In this case, the motor current signal or imaging procedures can be used for position control. As long as the motor current signal is pulsatile, the Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter is correctly positioned across the valve. This signal must be monitored closely because the catheter can become displaced when moving the patient or changing the patient’s position. Therefore, if patient hemodynamics change—for example, if arterial pressure falls or there are signs of left ventricular failure—check the correct positioning of the catheter using imaging procedures (eg, TEE) and the motor current signal.

---

**Accuracy of Displayed Flow Rate**

Under normal operating conditions, displayed flow rate can deviate from the actual flow rate by up to 0.5 L/min.

---

**Zeroing the Differential Pressure Sensor When the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is Running**

The controller software contains a data table listing the expected differential pressure for a given motor current when the motor speed is set to a specific value. To zero the differential pressure sensor while the Impella® 5.0 Catheter is running, the software sets the motor speed and measures the motor current. Using the data table, the software determines what the measured differential pressure should be, then adjusts the signal from the differential pressure sensor so that it matches the expected value.
SUCTION DETECTION DURING SENSOR DRIFT OR SENSOR FAILURE

If sensor drift occurs or the pressure sensor fails, the controller can no longer detect suction. (For more information about suction, refer to the “Suction” discussion earlier in this section of the manual.) The effectiveness of Impella® 5.0 or LD Catheter support can only be assessed by monitoring patient hemodynamics, cardiac imaging, and the Impella® 5.0 Catheter motor current.

Signs of suction include:

- A drop in the patient’s arterial pressure
- Decreased output, if a cardiac monitor is in place
- Dampened or flat motor current waveforms

If imaging reveals that the suction is caused by the catheter inlet area in close proximity to the intraventricular wall, reposition the catheter as described in Table 7.1. If hemodynamic parameters, such as low aortic pressure or high pulmonary artery pressure, indicate suction caused by inadequate filling volume, reduce P-level and follow the management strategies described in Table 7.1.

ENABLING PURGE FLOW NOTIFICATIONS

The purge flow notification white alarms (“Purge Flow Increased” and “Purge Flow Decreased”) are disabled by default.

To enable these alarms:

1. Press MENU and scroll to “Settings/Services.” Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to “Enable Purge Flow Change Notifications” and press the selector knob to enable these alarms.

DISABLING AUDIO FOR PLACEMENT SIGNAL LUMEN BLOCKED ALARM (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

The audio for the “Placement Signal Lumen Blocked” alarm can be disabled.

To disable the audio for this alarm:

1. Press MENU and scroll to “Settings/Services.” Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to “Disable Audio – Placement Signal Lumen Blocked” and press the selector knob to disable the audio for this alarm.
DISABLING AUDIO FOR SUCTION ALARM

The audio for the “Suction” alarm can be disabled.

To disable the audio for this alarm:

1. Press MENU and scroll to “Settings/Services.” Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to “Disable Audio – Suction” and press the selector knob to disable the audio for this alarm.

DISABLING AUDIO FOR PLACEMENT SIGNAL NOT RELIABLE ALARM

The audio for the “Placement Signal Not Reliable” alarm can be disabled.

To disable the audio for this alarm:

1. Press MENU and scroll to “Settings/Services.” Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to “Disable Audio – Placement Signal Not Reliable” and press the selector knob to disable the audio for this alarm.

DISABLING AUDIO FOR PURGE PRESSURE HIGH AND PURGE SYSTEM BLOCKED ALARMS

The audio for the “Purge Pressure High” and “Purge Pressure Blocked” alarms can be disabled.

To disable the audio for this alarm:

1. Press MENU and scroll to “Settings/Services.” Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to “Disable Audio – Purge Pressure High/System Blocked” and press the selector knob to disable the audio for this alarm.

SURGICAL MODE

Surgical Mode can be enabled to silence the “Impella Stopped” alarm that occurs when P-level is reduced to P-0. A white banner notification (see Figure 7.14) appears throughout the duration of Surgical Mode support.

To enable Surgical Mode:

1. Press MENU and scroll to “Settings/Services.” Press the selector knob.
2. Scroll to “Enable Surgical Mode” and press the selector knob to enable it.

You can disable Surgical Mode in one of two ways:
1. Increase P-level above P-0, or
2. Press MENU and scroll to and select “Settings/Services” and then scroll to and select “Disable Surgical Mode.”

TIMED DATA RECORDING

The Automated Impella® Controller can hold up to 24 hours of real-time data. Once memory is full, the controller starts overwriting the old data. The timed data recording feature allows you to permanently save real-time operating data for later analysis. Timed data recording is automatically turned on during certain alarm conditions to capture data for analysis. You can also manually turn on the feature at any time to capture data for later analysis.

To manually access the timed data recording feature:

1. Press MENU and scroll to “Start Data Snapshot.” Press the selector knob.
2. The controller records data for a predefined period of 10 minutes.

OPERATING THE IMPELLA® CATHETER IN ELECTROMAGNETIC FIELDS

The Impella® Catheter contains a permanent magnet motor that emits an electromagnetic field.
This field may produce electromagnetic interference with other equipment. In addition, other equipment that emits a strong electromagnetic field may affect the operation of the Impella® Catheter motor.

**ELECTROANATOMIC MAPPING (EAM) SYSTEMS**

The electromagnetic field emitted by the Impella® Catheter may produce interference with the magnetic location detection component of the electroanatomic mapping (EAM) system, particularly when the mapping catheter is close to the Impella® Catheter motor. For example, mapping in the right or left ventricular outflow tracts places the mapping catheter in close proximity to the Impella® Catheter motor in the ascending aorta.

Electromagnetic interference may appear as:

- Instability in the displayed location of the mapping catheter
- Magnetic interference errors generated by the electroanatomic mapping system

When operating the Impella® Catheter in the presence of an EAM system, use P-level mode. Operate the Impella® Catheter at P-1–P-5 or P-7. The motor speeds at these P-levels cause the least interference. Best performance is observed when the Impella® Catheter motor is at least 3 cm from the sensors in the mapping catheter. If you suspect interference, follow the troubleshooting steps in Table 7.3.

**Table 7.3 Troubleshooting When Operating the Impella® Catheter in the Presence of an EAM System**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Observation</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Interference with the magnetic location detection component of the EAM system | 1. Check for and address other sources of interference.  
  2. Reposition the Impella® Catheter to ensure that the Impella® motor is at least 3 cm from the sensors in the mapping catheter; however do NOT pull the inlet area out of the left ventricle.  
  3. Ensure that the Impella® Catheter is operating at P-1–P-5 or P-7, as these P-levels cause the least interference. |

**MAGNETIC NAVIGATION SYSTEMS (MNS)**

When initiating Impella® Catheter support in the presence of a magnetic navigation system (MNS), follow the steps below:

1. Insert the Impella® Catheter following the steps outlined in section 5 of this manual.
2. Place the MNS magnets in the “Reduced” or “Stowed” position.
3. Start the Impella® Catheter in the manner described in section 5 of this manual. Increase P-level to P-3.
4. Place the MNS magnets in the “Navigate” position and proceed with magnetic navigation.

Keep operating the Impella® Catheter at a P-level of at least P-3 when the MNS magnets are in the “Navigate” position. If the P-level falls below P-3, the Impella® Catheter may stop running. To resume operation, follow the steps in Table 7.4.

During magnetic navigation of the mapping catheter, the motor current of the Impella® Catheter
may temporarily increase to the point that the catheter stops running. Table 7.4 explains how to resume operation.

When the MNS magnets are in the “Navigate” position, the displayed Impella® Catheter flow may be artificially elevated. To accurately assess the flow rate, note the displayed flow when the magnets are in the “Stowed” position.

Table 7.4  Troubleshooting When Operating the Impella® Catheter in the Presence of a MNS System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Observation</th>
<th>Actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Unable to start Impella® or Impella® stops running | 1. Place the MNS magnets in the “Reduced” position and attempt to start the Impella® Catheter.  
2. If the Impella® Catheter does NOT start with the magnets in the “Reduced” position, place the magnets in the “Stowed” position and start the Impella® Catheter.  
3. Increase the Impella® Catheter P-level to P-3 or higher.  
4. Place the MNS magnets in the “Navigate” position and proceed with magnetic navigation. |
| MNS magnets: “Navigate”  
Displayed flow seems too high or MNS magnets: “Stowed”  
Displayed flow drops | The Impella® Catheter displayed flow will be artificially elevated when the MNS magnets are in the “Navigate” position.  
The displayed flow will be accurate when the MNS magnets are in the “Stowed” position. |

**TRANSFERRING FROM THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER TO A NEW AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER**

**TRANSFER STEPS**

A backup Automated Impella® Controller should be available at all times when a patient is on support. In the event that the controller fails, follow the steps below to transition the Impella® Catheter to the backup controller.

1. Confirm that the backup controller is powered on and ready.
2. Press **PURGE SYSTEM** on the original controller, select Change Purge Fluid, and complete the step to bolus the purge system. (Do NOT flush the purge fluid from the cassette.)
3. Disconnect the yellow luer connector from the Impella® Catheter to release the pressure in the purge cassette.
4. Transfer the purge cassette and purge solution from the original controller to the backup controller.
5. Reconnect the yellow luer connector to the Impella® Catheter.

6. Remove the white connector cable from the original controller and plug it into the catheter plug on the front of the backup controller.

7. Once the Impella® Catheter is connected to the backup controller, wait for a message to appear on the screen asking you to confirm re-starting the Impella® Catheter at the previously set P-level.

8. Press OK within 10 seconds to confirm restarting the Impella® Catheter at the previously set P-level.

9. If the message to restart the Impella® Catheter does not appear within 30 seconds, restart the Impella® Catheter using the FLOW CONTROL soft button.

**PATIENT MANAGEMENT CHECKLIST FOLLOWING TRANSFER OF SUPPORT**

After transferring patient support to or from the Automated Impella® Controller, perform each of the following patient management checklist items:


2. Tighten the Tuohy-Borst valve (tighten all the way to the right) on the Impella® Catheter to prevent catheter migration.

3. For the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters, attach a saline pressure bag pressurized to 350 mmHg to the red sidearm and complete the “Transfer to Standard Configuration” procedure under the PURGE SYSTEM menu if not already completed.

**EMERGENCY SHUTDOWN PROCEDURE**

In the unlikely event that the Automated Impella® Controller software stops responding, follow the procedure below to restart the controller without stopping the Impella® Catheter.

1. Press and hold the power switch for 30 seconds.

2. An “Emergency Shutdown Imminent” alarm will sound at 15 seconds.

3. The controller will shut down after 30 seconds.

4. Restart the controller.

---

**Questions or Concerns?**

Contact the local Abiomed team or call the 24 hour clinical support line at 1-800-422-8666.
**ALARMS OVERVIEW**

The Automated Impella® Controller monitors various functions to determine whether specific operational parameters are within expected limits. When a parameter goes outside of its specified limits, the Automated Impella® Controller sounds an alarm tone and displays an alarm message that can be viewed on the display screen on the front of the controller. The alarm tone indicates the severity of the alarm. The alarm message on the display screen is color-coded for severity and provides details on the cause of the alarm and how to resolve the alarm. After muting an alarm, if another alarm occurs it will only be heard and displayed if it is a higher priority alarm than the one that was muted.

**ALARM LEVELS**

Alarms are divided into three levels of severity:

- **Advisory (white)**
- **Serious (yellow)**
- **Critical (red)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Audible Indicator*</th>
<th>Visual Indicator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advisory</td>
<td>Notification</td>
<td>1 beep every 5 minutes</td>
<td>Alarm header on white background</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serious</td>
<td>May become harmful or life-threatening if not addressed immediately</td>
<td>3 beeps every 15 seconds</td>
<td>Alarm header on yellow background</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical</td>
<td>Immediately harmful or life-threatening</td>
<td>10 beeps every 6.7 seconds</td>
<td>Alarm header on red background</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Sound pressure of audible alarm indicators is >80 dBA

For some alarms, there is a short delay between the triggered event and the audible annunciation and visual display of the alarm. (For more information, refer to the “Alarm Delay Information” discussion in section 9 of this manual.)
**ALARM DISPLAY**

The alarm window is located in the upper left region of the display screen on the front of the Automated Impella® Controller (see Figure 8.1). Alarms are listed in order of priority, with the highest priority alarm at the top. Up to three alarms may be displayed at one time. The colored background behind the highest priority alarm will alternate between two shades of that color. The white panel displayed to the right of the alarm header contains instructions for resolving the alarm condition. The instructions should be followed in the order given.

**MUTE ALARM FUNCTION**

Pressing the MUTE ALARM button on the upper right of the Automated Impella® Controller display screen will silence the audible alarm indicator for 2 minutes (for red or yellow alarms) or 5 minutes (for white advisory alarms). When an alarm is silenced, the words “MUTE ALARM” next to the button are replaced by the mute alarm indicator, a crossed-out bell icon (as shown in Figure 8.1).

**ALARM HISTORY SCREEN**

The alarm history screen may be accessed through the MENU. This screen contains a log of the alarms that occurred during the case. This log is not maintained when the Automated Impella® Controller is powered down or after a power failure. The controller does, however, maintain a long-term log that is saved after the Automated Impella® Controller is powered down or after a power failure and this information may be downloaded by Abiomed personnel.
Table 8.2 briefly describes all of the alarm messages that may appear on the Automated Impella® Controller when used with the Impella® 2.5 Catheter.

### Table 8.2 Automated Impella® Controller Alarm Messages

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Alarm Header</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Air in Purge System</strong></td>
<td>The purge system has stopped.</td>
<td>There is air in the purge tubing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Initiate the De-air Tool and follow</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>instructions to remove the air from the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>system.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Battery Critically Low</strong></td>
<td>Plug controller into AC power.</td>
<td>Battery power has 15% remaining capacity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Battery Failure</strong></td>
<td>1. Plug controller into AC power.</td>
<td>A battery switch is turned off or there is a malfunction of the switch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Press switch located on the underside of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>the controller.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3. Switch to backup controller.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Battery Failure</strong></td>
<td>Plug controller into AC power.</td>
<td>One of the batteries has failed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Battery Temperature High</strong></td>
<td>Switch to backup controller.</td>
<td>Battery temperature is greater than 60°C.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Complete Procedure</strong></td>
<td>1. Follow the steps on the screen or</td>
<td>Complete Procedure serious alarm (yellow; see next page) is active and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Exit the procedure</td>
<td>the user has not responded for an additional 2 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Controller Failure</strong></td>
<td>Switch to backup controller.</td>
<td>There is a problem with the controller electronics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Controller Failure</strong></td>
<td>The purge system has stopped.</td>
<td>The controller has detected a purge pressure sensor defect and has</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Switch to backup controller.</td>
<td>stopped the purge system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Emergency Shutdown Imminent</strong></td>
<td>Release ON/OFF push button.</td>
<td>Power switch pressed for 15 seconds while Impella® is still connected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Impella Disconnected</strong></td>
<td>1. Check cable connection to console.</td>
<td>Running Impella® Catheter disconnected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Check Impella connection to cable.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Impella Failure</strong></td>
<td>Replace Impella.</td>
<td>There is a problem with the Impella® Catheter motor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severity</td>
<td>Alarm Header</td>
<td>Action</td>
<td>Cause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Critical Alarms</td>
<td><strong>Impella Position In Ventricle</strong></td>
<td>1. Reduce the P-level to P-2 until imaging is available. 2. Reposition with imaging. 3. Return to preferred P-level and confirm positioning with imaging.</td>
<td>Controller has detected that Impella® Catheter is fully in the ventricle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Impella Position Wrong</strong></td>
<td>1. Reduce the P-level to P-2 until imaging is available. 2. Reposition with imaging. 3. Return to preferred P-level and confirm positioning with imaging.</td>
<td>Controller has detected that Impella® Catheter is in the wrong position.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Impella Stopped Retrograde Flow</strong></td>
<td>To prevent retrograde flow, restart Impella or withdraw pump from ventricle.</td>
<td>Impella® Catheter is not running; possible retrograde flow through Impella® Catheter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Impella Stopped</strong></td>
<td>1. Restart Impella. 2. Replace Impella after 3rd unsuccessful restart attempt.</td>
<td>There may be a mechanical or electrical problem in the Impella® Catheter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Impella Stopped Controller Failure</strong></td>
<td>1. Replace white connector cable. 2. Switch to backup controller. 3. Replace Impella Catheter.</td>
<td>There is a problem with the electronics.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Impella Stopped Motor Current High</strong></td>
<td>1. Restart Impella. 2. Replace Impella after 3rd unsuccessful restart attempt.</td>
<td>There is a problem with the Impella® Catheter motor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Purge Disc Not Detected</strong></td>
<td>Reinsert Purge Disc.</td>
<td>The controller is not detecting that the purge disc is clicked into the front of the controller.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Purge Pressure High</strong></td>
<td>1. Check purge system tubing for kinks. 2. Decrease concentration of dextrose in the purge solution.</td>
<td>Purge pressure is ≥1100 mmHg with the purge flow &lt;2 mL/hr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Purge Pressure Low</strong></td>
<td>1. Check purge system tubing for leaks. 2. Increase concentration of dextrose in the purge solution. 3. Replace purge cassette.</td>
<td>Purge pressure has dropped below 300 mmHg with the purge flow ≥30 mL/hr for 30 seconds or longer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 8.2 Automated Impella® Controller Alarm Messages (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Alarm Header</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Critical Alarms</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Purge System Blocked | 1. Check all purge system tubing for kinks or blockages.  
                     | 2. Decrease concentration of dextrose in the purge solution.           | Purge flow has dropped below 1 mL/hr.  
                     |                                                                 | Kinked or blocked purge connecting tube.  
                     |                                                                 | Kinked or blocked purge lumen in Impella® Catheter.                 |
| Purge System Failure | 1. Replace purge cassette.  
                         | 2. Switch to backup controller.                                         | There is a problem with the purge cassette or purge unit driver.      |
| Purge System Open   | 1. Check the purge system tubing for open connections or leaks.  
                      | 2. Replace purge cassette.                                              | Purge pressure has dropped below 100 mmHg for 20 seconds or longer.   |
| Retrograde Flow     | Check for high afterload pressure.  |                                                                        | Retrograde flow detected at high motor speed.                          |
| Battery Comm. Failure | Plug controller into AC power.    |                                                                        | Loss of communication to the battery.                                  |
| Battery Level Low   | Plug controller into AC power.      |                                                                        | Battery has 50% remaining capacity.                                    |
| Battery Temperature High | 1. Check controller for blocked air vents.  
                          | 2. Switch to backup controller.                                         | Battery temperature is greater than 50°C and less than or equal to 60°C. |
| Complete Procedure  | 1. Follow the steps on the screen or  
                      | 2. Exit the procedure                                                   | User has not responded to a de-air or purge procedure screen for more than 1 minute or a transfer to standard configuration screen for more than 5 minutes. |
| Serious Alarms      |                                     |                                                                        |                                                                       |
| Controller Error    | Switch to backup controller.        |                                                                        | There is a problem with the controller electronics.                   |
| Impella Catheter Not Supported | 1. Replace Impella with supported catheter (2.5, CP, 5.0, LD, RP).  
                                      | 2. Contact Abiomed Service to upgrade Impella Controller.               | The Impella® Catheter is not supported to operate with the current version of controller software and/or hardware. |
| Impella Defective   | Do not use Impella.  
                      | Replace Impella.                                                        | There is a problem with the Impella® Catheter electronics.            |
| Impella Flow Low    | 1. Check for suction.  
                      | 2. Check for high afterload pressure.                                   | Actual flow is below 2.5 L/min.                                      |
| Impella Outflow Blocked | 1. Confirm Impella position with imaging.  
<pre><code>                   | 2. Pull Impella back 2 cm.                                              | Flow to Impella Catheter outlet area obstructed.                      |
</code></pre>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Alarm Header</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|                 | Impella Position Wrong               | 1. Confirm Impella position with imaging.  
|                  |                                       | 2. Pull Impella back 2 cm.                                              | Controller has detected that the Impella® Catheter is in the wrong position, with the outlet area too close to the aortic valve. |
|                  | Placement Signal Not Reliable        | Placement Monitoring and Suction are suspended.  
|                  |                                       | 1. Monitor patient hemodynamics.  
|                  |                                       | 2. Monitor Impella position with imaging.                              | There is a problem with the Impella® Catheter sensor signal.         |
|                  | Purge Cassette Failure               | Replace purge cassette.                                                | There is a problem with the purge cassette hardware.                 |
|                  | Purge Volume Critically Low          | 1. Open the PURGE SYSTEM menu and select Change Purge Fluid.  
|                  |                                       | 2. Follow the instructions to change the purge fluid.                  | There are 15 mL (in addition to 5% of the starting bag volume) or fewer remaining in the purge fluid bag. |
|                  | Reinstall Software                  | Software installation was unsuccessful.  
|                  |                                       | Reinstall software.                                                    | Software was not installed successfully.                              |
|                  | Suction                              | 1. Check filling and volume status.  
|                  |                                       | 2. Check Impella position.                                             | Suction is detected.                                                   |
|                  |                                       | 3. Reduce P-Level.                                                     |                                                                      |
|                  | AC Power Disconnected                | Controller is running on battery power.                                | AC power was disconnected.                                           |
|                  | Audio Off                            | The audio for the following alarm has been disabled.  
|                  |                                       | <Alarm will be listed here>                                            | User has disabled audio for Placement Signal Not Reliable, Purge Pressure High, Purge System Blocked, Suction, or Placement Signal Lumen Blocked alarm. |
|                  | Impella Flow Reduced                 | 1. Check Impella position.  
|                  |                                       | 2. Check filling and volume status.  
|                  |                                       | 3. Reduce P-Level.                                                     | Motor speed has been reduced in response to suction.                  |
|                  | Impella Position Unknown             | Impella Catheter position unknown due to low pulsatility.  
|                  |                                       | Assess cardiac function.                                               | Impella Catheter position unknown due to low pulsatility.             |
|                  | Impella Position Unknown             | Confirm Impella position with imaging.                                | Impella Catheter position unknown detected by algorithm.             |
|                  | Placement Signal Lumen Blocked       | Placement and Suction Monitoring are Suspended.  
|                  |                                       | Aspirate with syringe, then flush.                                    | Placement signal pulsatility is low and placement signal amplitude is high (>130mmHg) for 30 consecutive seconds. |
### Table 8.2 Automated Impella® Controller Alarm Messages (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Severity</th>
<th>Alarm Header</th>
<th>Action</th>
<th>Cause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Advisory Alarms</td>
<td>Preventing Retrograde Flow</td>
<td>Impella P-level has increased to prevent retrograde flow.</td>
<td>Retrograde flow has been detected and minimum motor speed has been increased to more than target P-level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1. Consider increasing target P-level.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. For weaning, disable Retrograde Flow Control through <strong>MENU</strong> soft key.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purge Cassette Incompatible</td>
<td>Contact Abiomed Service to update Impella Controller.</td>
<td>Incompatible purge cassette RFID version.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purge Flow Decreased</td>
<td>The purge flow has decreased by 2.5 mL/hr or more.</td>
<td>Purge flow has decreased by ≥2.5 mL/hr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This is a notification only; no action is required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purge Flow Increased</td>
<td>The purge flow has increased by 2.5 mL/hr or more.</td>
<td>Purge flow has increased by ≥2.5 mL/hr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>This is a notification only; no action is required.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Purge Volume Low</td>
<td>1. Open <strong>PURGE SYSTEM</strong> menu and select Change Purge Fluid.</td>
<td>There are 30 mL (in addition to 5% of the starting bag volume) or fewer remaining in the purge fluid bag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2. Follow the instructions to change the purge fluid.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Surgical Mode Enabled</td>
<td>Impella pump stopped. Purge system running.</td>
<td>Surgical Mode has been enabled to silence “Impella Stopped” alarm at P-0.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>‘Impella Stopped’ alarm disabled. To exit this mode start Impella pump.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Transfer to Standard Configuration</td>
<td>Press the Purge System soft key then select Transfer to Standard Configuration.</td>
<td>Follow instructions or press <strong>MUTE ALARM</strong> to clear the alarm for 30 minutes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unexpected Controller Shutdown</td>
<td>Switch to back-up Controller if condition persists.</td>
<td>Unexpected restart of controller due to software of hardware failures.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
9 GENERAL SYSTEM INFORMATION

TERMINOLOGY, ABBREVIATIONS, AND SYMBOLS ........................................... 9.1
  Terminology and Abbreviations .................................................................. 9.1
  Symbols ...................................................................................................... 9.1

AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER MECHANICAL SPECIFICATIONS ...... 9.3

AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS .... 9.3

EQUIPMENT DESIGN ..................................................................................... 9.4

EQUIPMENT CLASSIFICATIONS .................................................................... 9.5

FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC) NOTICE .................. 9.5

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY ............................................................ 9.6

TRANSPORT BETWEEN HOSPITALS ........................................................... 9.7
  Guidelines for Patient Transport ................................................................. 9.7
  Important Transport Considerations ......................................................... 9.8
  FAA Advisory ............................................................................................. 9.8

VGA MONITOR CONNECTION ...................................................................... 9.11

ALARM DELAY INFORMATION ..................................................................... 9.12

PATIENT ENVIRONMENT ............................................................................. 9.12

WHITE CONNECTOR CABLE ......................................................................... 9.13

IMPELLA® CATHETER PARAMETERS ............................................................. 9.13

IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER DIMENSIONS ....................................................... 9.14

IMPELLA® CP® CATHETER DIMENSIONS .................................................... 9.14

IMPELLA® 5.0 CATHETER DIMENSIONS ....................................................... 9.15

IMPELLA® LD CATHETER DIMENSIONS ....................................................... 9.15

CLEANING .................................................................................................... 9.16

STORING THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER .............................. 9.16

RETURNING AN IMPELLA® CATHETER TO ABIOMED (UNITED STATES) .... 9.16
### TERMINOLOGY AND ABBREVIATIONS

**Table 9.1  Terminology and Abbreviations**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Catheter serial number</td>
<td>Identification number of the Impella® Catheter; stated on the package label, on the red Impella® plug, and the Automated Impella® Controller display screen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextrose and Glucose</td>
<td>The terms “dextrose” and “glucose” are used interchangeably to refer to the solution used as purge fluid for the Impella® System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hz</td>
<td>Hertz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motor housing (or pump housing)</td>
<td>Enclosure of the Impella® Catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pump</td>
<td>Central delivery unit of the Impella® Catheter, consisting of the motor, motor housing, cannula with inlet and outlet, and pigtail at the tip</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purge pressure</td>
<td>Pressure present in the Impella® Catheter and in the infusion line</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purge system</td>
<td>Impella® purge cassette used for rinsing the Impella® Catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retrograde flow</td>
<td>Reverse flow through the cannula when the Impella® Catheter is at a standstill (eg, regurgitation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>Volt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VA</td>
<td>Volt ampere (Watt)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SYMBOLS

**Table 9.2  Symbols**

- 💥 ⚠️ Caution; consult instructions for use
- 💓 ⚔️ Defibrillator-proof type CF equipment
- ☔️ ☀️ Keep dry
- 🧪 +10°C +30°C Storage temperature (eg, 10°C to 30°C)
- ⚙️ 2014-10-01 Date of manufacture (eg, October 1, 2014)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Sun" /></td>
<td>Protect from sunlight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="LOT" /></td>
<td>Symbol for lot designation; the manufacturer’s lot designation must be stated after the LOT symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF 123456</td>
<td>Abiomed part number (eg, part number 123456)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN 123456</td>
<td>Manufacturer’s serial number (eg, serial number 123456)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non Sterile!</td>
<td>The product is not sterile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Date" /> 2016-06-01</td>
<td>Use-by date (eg, use before June 1, 2016)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="No Reuse" /></td>
<td>Do not reuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Sterile EO" /></td>
<td>Sterilized using ethylene oxide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Trash" /></td>
<td>Electric scrap; must be disposed of separately. Must not be disposed of as domestic waste.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Protective Earth" /></td>
<td>Protective Earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="AC" /></td>
<td>Alternating current (AC) only</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Equipotentiality" /></td>
<td>Equipotentiality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Fuse" /></td>
<td>Fuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Radiation" /></td>
<td>Non-ionizing electromagnetic radiation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="USB" /></td>
<td>USB port</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="CAT 5" /></td>
<td>CAT 5 Port (Ethernet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="MR" /></td>
<td>MR Unsafe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Do Not Flush" /></td>
<td>Do NOT flush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Glucose" /></td>
<td>Use glucose in the purge fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="NaCl" /></td>
<td>Use saline in the pressure bag; squeeze at the green arrows to flush</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER MECHANICAL SPECIFICATIONS

**Table 9.3 Mechanical specifications for the Automated Impella Controller**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Model Number</td>
<td>0042-0000-US</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temperature</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating</td>
<td>10°C to 40°C (50°F to 104°F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>–15°C to 50°C (5°F to 122°F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Humidity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating</td>
<td>95%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>95%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atmospheric Pressure</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operating</td>
<td>8000 ft (750 hPa) to –1000 ft (1050 hPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage</td>
<td>18,000 ft (500 hPa) to –1000 ft (1050 hPa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>351 mm (13.8 in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>443 mm (17.4 in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth</td>
<td>236 mm (9.3 in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimensions – Packaged</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Height</td>
<td>508 mm (20.0 in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Width</td>
<td>559 mm (22.0 in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Depth</td>
<td>406 mm (15.0 in)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight</td>
<td>Maximum: 11.8 kg (26.1 lbs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weight – Packaged</td>
<td>Maximum: 13.6 kg (30 lbs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintenance and repair interval</td>
<td>12 months (Work must be performed by technicians authorized by Abiomed who have completed Abiomed’s Service Training Certification Program)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATIONS

**Table 9.4 Electrical specifications for the Automated Impella Controller**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AC operation</th>
<th>100-230 V AC (nominal); 47-63 Hz; 1.1 A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Internal battery operation</td>
<td>14.4 V DC (nominal); lithium ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Characteristic values</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max. power consumption under load Fuses</td>
<td>120 VA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Running time without AC power with fully charged batteries</td>
<td>At least 60 minutes (charging duration of at least 5 hours)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical system</td>
<td>Installation in accordance with pertinent regulations is required for use in medical facilities (eg, IEC stipulations).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE:** Circuit diagrams available upon request.
EQUIPMENT DESIGN

The Automated Impella® Controller conforms to the applicable requirements of the following standards:

- IEC 60601-1 (2005/01/01) Ed:3 Medical Electrical Equipment Part 1: General Requirements for Basic Safety and Essential Performance
EQUIPMENT CLASSIFICATIONS

Table 9.5  Equipment classifications

| Type of protection against electric shock | IEC 60601-1: Class I degree of protection: CF defibrillation-proof and internally powered. Relies not only on basic insulation against shock but also includes additional protection. Accomplished by providing means for connecting the equipment to the protective earth conductor of the fixed wiring of the installation in a way that prevents accessible metal parts from becoming live if basic insulation fails. |
| Degree of protection against electric shock for Automated Impella® Controller | Class I Equipment |
| Mode of operation | Continuous |
| Degree of protection against explosion hazard | Not suitable for use in the presence of a flammable anesthetic mixture with air or with oxygen or nitrous oxide. Also not suitable for use in an oxygen-enriched atmosphere. |
| Degree of protection against harmful ingress of water | IEC 60529: IPX1 protected against dripping water. |

FEDERAL COMMUNICATIONS COMMISSION (FCC) NOTICE

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by Abiomed, Inc. could void the user’s authority to operate this device.
## ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

- **Medical electrical equipment needs special precautions regarding EMC and needs to be installed and put into service according to the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) information provided in this document.**

- **Portable and mobile RF communications equipment can affect medical electrical equipment.**

- **The equipment or system should not be used adjacent to or stacked with other equipment. If adjacent or stacked use is necessary, the equipment or system should be observed to verify normal operation in the configuration in which it will be used.**

- **Use of cables, other than those sold by Abiomed, may result in increased emissions or decreased immunity of the Automated Impella® Controller.**

- **The Automated Impella® Controller uses RFID (radio frequency identification) to identify and communicate with the purge cassette. Other equipment may interfere with the Automated Impella® Controller even if that other equipment complies with CISPR emission requirements.**

- **During transport, the Automated Impella® Controller may be exposed to stronger electromagnetic disturbance than during in-hospital use. Strong electromagnetic disturbance may cause the Automated Impella® Controller to display soft button menu selections that were not selected by the user. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the operating parameters are not affected. No user intervention is required. Monitor Impella® Catheter flow and patient hemodynamics to confirm normal operation. The condition will resolve itself once the Automated Impella® Controller is no longer exposed to the disturbance.**

**NOTE:** The EMC tables and other guidelines that are included in this manual provide information to the customer or user that is essential in determining the suitability of the equipment or system for the electromagnetic environment of use, and in managing the electromagnetic environment of use permit the equipment or system to perform to its intended use without disturbing other equipment and systems or non-medical electrical equipment. For the electromagnetic testing (detailed in the following tables), the AIC Essential Performance was specified as: *during the entire testing period, the AIC continues to provide support to the patient.*
TRANSPORT BETWEEN HOSPITALS

During transport, the Automated Impella® Controller may be exposed to stronger electromagnetic disturbance than during in-hospital use. Strong electromagnetic disturbance may cause the Automated Impella® Controller to display soft button menu selections that were not selected by the user. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the operating parameters are not affected. No user intervention is required. Monitor Impella® Catheter flow and patient hemodynamics to confirm normal operation. The condition will resolve itself once the Automated Impella® Controller is no longer exposed to the disturbance.

GUIDELINES FOR PATIENT TRANSPORT

Intra-hospital transport with the Impella® Catheter in place may be required if a patient requires additional resources and specialized teams located at another hospital. The patient may be transferred to such a location using the Automated Impella® Controller for hospital-to-hospital transport via ambulance, helicopter, or fixed-wing aircraft.

Maintaining optimal patient hemodynamic status and correct Impella® Catheter position are two key factors in managing patients supported with the Impella Ventricular Support Systems during transport. Steps should be taken to eliminate or minimize any aspect of the transport that might adversely affect these factors.

The Automated Impella® Controller is designed to operate for 60 minutes on battery power. Transport teams should take this into consideration when planning the transport. If the total transport time is expected to include more than 60 minutes during which the system will be disconnected from AC power, arrangements should be made to use a vehicle with a built-in DC to AC power inverter.
IMPORTANT TRANSPORT CONSIDERATIONS

1. Planning is critical to success. Abiomed representatives can help with planning for transport. They can be contacted 24 hours a day at 1-800-422-8666.

2. The Automated Impella® Controller should be fully charged prior to transport. Keep the Automated Impella® Controller connected to AC power (or an AC inverter) whenever possible.

3. Do not stress the connector cable from the controller to the Impella® Catheter. Such tension could move the catheter out of correct position and compromise patient circulatory support.

4. Carefully monitor purge pressures during changes in altitude.

5. The Automated Impella® Controller should be positioned to allow easy access to the display screen and soft buttons to view alarms and make any necessary changes.

6. Maintain ACTs between 160 and 180 or at the level recommended by the physician responsible for the patient.

FAA ADVISORY

The Automated Impella® Controller has been subjected to, and passed, the EMC/EMI tests as specified in IEC 60601-1-2 (General requirements for basic safety and essential performance—Collateral standard: Electromagnetic compatibility—Requirements and tests). The Automated Impella® Controller does not, however, meet the requirements for conducted emissions of RTCA/DO-160G section 21.4 and has not been tested for radiated emissions per RTCA/DO-160G section 21.5. Abiomed recommends that air transport carriers follow the guidance FAA Advisory Circular AC No: 91-21.1B. Section 8-a of FAA Advisory Circular AC No: 91-21.1B states:

“Equipment tested and found to exceed the section 21, Category M, emission levels are required to be evaluated in the operator’s M-PED selected model aircraft for electromagnetic interference (EMI) and radio frequency interference (RFI). All navigation, communication, engine, and flight control systems will be operating in the selected aircraft during the evaluation.”
The Automated Impella® Controller is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or user of the Automated Impella® Controller should ensure that it is used in such an environment.

**Table 9.6  Guidance and manufacturer’s declaration - emissions, all equipment and systems**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Emissions Test</th>
<th>Compliance</th>
<th>Electromagnetic Enforcement – Guidance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RF Emissions</td>
<td>Group 1 Class A</td>
<td>The Automated Impella® Controller uses RF energy only for its internal function. Therefore, its RF emissions are very low and are not likely to cause any interference in nearby electronic equipment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harmonics</td>
<td>Class A</td>
<td>The Automated Impella® Controller is suitable for use in all establishments other than domestic and those directly connected to the public low-voltage power supply network that supplies buildings used for domestic purposes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flicker</td>
<td>Complies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 9.7  Guidance and manufacturer’s declaration - immunity**

The Automated Impella® Controller is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or user of the Automated Impella® Controller should ensure that it is used in such an environment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Immunity Test</th>
<th>IEC 60601 Test Level</th>
<th>Compliance Level</th>
<th>Electromagnetic Environment – Guidance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Electrostatic Discharge (ESD) IEC 61000-4-2</td>
<td>±6 kV contact ±8 kV air</td>
<td>±8 kV contact ±15 kV air</td>
<td>The relative humidity should be at least 5%.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrical Fast Transient/burst IEC 61000-4-4</td>
<td>±2 kV Mains ±1 kV for input/ output lines</td>
<td>±2 kV Mains ±1 kV for input/ output lines</td>
<td>Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surge IEC 61000-4-5</td>
<td>±1 kV Differential ±2 kV Common</td>
<td>±1 kV Differential ±2 kV Common</td>
<td>Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage dips, short interruptions and voltage variations on power supply input lines IEC 61000-4-11</td>
<td>&gt; 95% dip for 0.5 cycle 60% dip for 5 cycles 30% dip for 25 cycles &gt; 95% dip for 5 seconds</td>
<td>&gt; 95% dip for 0.5 cycle 60% dip for 5 cycles 30% dip for 25 cycles &gt; 95% dip for 5 seconds</td>
<td>Mains power quality should be that of a typical commercial or hospital environment. If the user of the Automated Impella® Controller requires continued operation during power mains interruptions, it is recommended that the Automated Impella® Controller be powered from an uninterruptible power supply or battery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Frequency 50/60 Hz Magnetic Field IEC 61000-4-8</td>
<td>3 A/m</td>
<td>3 A/m</td>
<td>Power frequency magnetic fields should be that of a typical location in a typical commercial or hospital environment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 9.8  Guidance and manufacturer’s declaration - emissions, equipment and systems that are life-supporting

The Automated Impella® Controller is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment specified below. The customer or user of the Automated Impella® Controller should ensure that it is used in such an environment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Immunity Test</th>
<th>IEC 60601 Test Level</th>
<th>Compliance Level</th>
<th>Electromagnetic Environment – Guidance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conducted RF</td>
<td>IEC 61000-4-6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Portable and mobile RF communications equipment should be separated from the Automated Impella® Controller by no less than the recommended separation distances calculated/listed below:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 Vrms</td>
<td>10 Vrms</td>
<td>D = 0.35 \sqrt{P}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>150 kHz to 80 MHz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radiated RF</td>
<td>IEC 61000-4-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 V/m</td>
<td>20 V/m</td>
<td>D = 0.6 \sqrt{P} 80 to 800 MHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80 MHz to 2.5 GHz</td>
<td></td>
<td>D = 1.2 \sqrt{P} 800 MHz to 2.5 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Where P is the maximum power rating in watts and D is the recommended separation distance in meters.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Field strengths from fixed transmitters, as determined by an electromagnetic site survey, should be less than the compliance level in each frequency range.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Interference may occur in the vicinity of equipment marked with the following symbol:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NOTE 1:** At 80 MHz and 800 MHz, the higher frequency range applies.

**NOTE 2:** These guidelines may not apply in all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects, and people.

**(a)** Field strengths from fixed transmitters, such as base stations for radio (cellular/cordless) telephones and land mobile radios, amateur radio, AM and FM radio broadcast and TV broadcast cannot be predicted theoretically with accuracy. To assess the electromagnetic environment due to fixed RF transmitters, an electromagnetic site survey should be considered. If the measured field strength in the location in which the Impella® Controller is used exceeds the applicable RF compliance level above, the Impella® Controller should be observed to verify normal operation. If abnormal performance is observed, additional measures may be necessary, such as re-orienting or relocating the Impella® Controller.

**(b)** Over the frequency range 150 kHz to 80 MHz, field strengths should be less than 10 V/m
**Table 9.9  Recommended separation distances between portable and mobile RF communications equipment and the Automated Impella Controller, equipment and systems that are life-supporting**

The Automated Impella® Controller is intended for use in the electromagnetic environment in which radiated disturbances are controlled. The customer or user of the Automated Impella® Controller can help prevent electromagnetic interference by maintaining a minimum distance between portable and mobile RF communications equipment and the Automated Impella® Controller as recommended below, according to the maximum output power of the communications equipment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rated Maximum Output of Transmitter (Watts)</th>
<th>Recommended Separation Distances for the Automated Impella® Controller (m)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>150 KHz to 80 MHz</td>
<td>d = 0.35√P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80 to 800 MHz</td>
<td>d = 0.6√P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>800 MHz to 2.5 GHz</td>
<td>d = 1.2√P</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For transmitters rated at a maximum output power not listed above, the recommended separation distance (d) in meters (m) can be determined using the equation applicable to the frequency of the transmitter, where P is the maximum output power rating of the transmitter in watts (W) according to the transmitter manufacturer.

**NOTE 1:** At 80 MHz and 800 MHz, the separation distance for the higher frequency range applies.

**NOTE 2:** These guidelines may not apply in all situations. Electromagnetic propagation is affected by absorption and reflection from structures, objects, and people.

**Table 9.10  RFID transmitter / receiver specifications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>13.56 MHz</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Receiver bandwidth</td>
<td>14 kHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective radiated power</td>
<td>30 nW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modulation</td>
<td>ASK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VGA MONITOR CONNECTION**

The Automated Impella® Controller, which is equipped with a VGA output connector, which can be connected to a remote monitor to display the information from the controller to another screen at a resolution of 800 x 600 pixels. The connection between the controller and the monitor can be made using a cable up to 20 feet in length, or other MDDS device. One MDDS device, the Remote Link, can be used to transfer the video stream from medical devices, which have a VGA output, to a remote viewing location (via the internet).

To set-up the Remote Link with the AIC, first it is connected to AC power. Then, the VGA output from the AIC, which provides a direct video stream of its display, is connected to the Remote Link. The communication between the Remote Link and the AIC is one-way. The streamed video data is limited to Impella device operating parameters and alarms messages. There is no patient identifiable information on any of the AIC screens. Lastly, the Remote Link is connected to the...
hospital LAN and the set-up is complete. The video stream information can then viewed by authorized users on their computer screen via a web browser.

During use with the Remote Link, a Medical Device Data System (MDDS), if the Automated Impella® Controller is exposed to strong electromagnetic disturbances, the Remote Link may either restart or shut down. Operators should be aware that, under these conditions, the Automated Impella® Controller operating parameters are not affected. If the Remote Link stops working because of electromagnetic disturbances, a hard restart (by first disconnecting, and then reconnecting its AC power) will correct the problem.

ALARM DELAY INFORMATION

For some Automated Impella® Controller alarms, there is a short delay between the triggered event and the audible annunciation and visual display of the alarm.

Table 9.11  Alarm Delay Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Alarm Type</th>
<th>Delay Time</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Impella Defective</td>
<td>8 second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impella Position Wrong</td>
<td>11±5 second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controller Error</td>
<td>12±3 second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency Shutdown Imminent</td>
<td>15±1 second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Failure</td>
<td>28±8 second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Controller Failure</td>
<td>38±8 second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Comm. Failure</td>
<td>40±10 second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purge System Blocked</td>
<td>75±45 second</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PATIENT ENVIRONMENT

The Automated Impella® Controller and the components of the Impella Ventricular Support Systems are approved for use within the patient environment defined in IEC 60601-1: 3rd edition and in the figure below.
**WHITE CONNECTOR CABLE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Length</th>
<th>2.5 m</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Service life</td>
<td>Single use only</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPELLA® CATHETER PARAMETERS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Impella® 2.5</th>
<th>Impella CP®</th>
<th>Impella® 5.0</th>
<th>Impella® LD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Speed range</td>
<td>0 to 51,000 rpm</td>
<td>0 to 46,000 rpm</td>
<td>0 to 33,000 rpm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power consumption</td>
<td>19.8 W</td>
<td>24 W</td>
<td>Less than 13 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voltage</td>
<td>Max. 20 V DC</td>
<td>Max. 20 V DC</td>
<td>Max. 20 V DC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flow-Maximum</td>
<td>2.5 L/min</td>
<td>3.3 L/min</td>
<td>5.0 L/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purging the Impella® Catheter</td>
<td>5% dextrose solution with heparin concentration of 50 IU per mL</td>
<td>5% dextrose solution with heparin concentration of 50 IU per mL</td>
<td>5% dextrose solution with heparin concentration of 50 IU per mL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dextrose concentration</td>
<td>5% to 40%</td>
<td>5% to 40%</td>
<td>5% to 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purge pressure</td>
<td>300 to 1100 mmHg</td>
<td>300 to 1100 mmHg</td>
<td>300 to 1100 mmHg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infusion rate</td>
<td>2 to 30 mL/hr</td>
<td>2 to 30 mL/hr</td>
<td>2 to 30 mL/hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Catheter dimensions</td>
<td>130 ± 3 mm</td>
<td>150 ± 3 mm</td>
<td>155 ± 3 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Length of invasive portion (without catheter)</td>
<td>Max. 4.2 mm (nom. 4.0 mm)</td>
<td>Max. 4.9 mm (nom. 4.7 mm)</td>
<td>Max. 7.2 mm (nom. 7.0 mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classification per IEC 60601-1</td>
<td>Not made with natural rubber latex</td>
<td>Not made with natural rubber latex</td>
<td>Not made with natural rubber latex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latex content</td>
<td>4 days</td>
<td>4 days</td>
<td>6 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maximum duration of use</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Weaning the patient from the Impella® Catheter is at the discretion of the physician. The Impella 2.5 and CP Systems have been approved for ≤ 4 days and the Impella 5.0 and LD Systems have been approved for ≤ 6 days of use. However, weaning could be delayed beyond the normal use for temporary support as an unintended consequence of continued instability of the patient’s hemodynamics. Inability to wean the patient from the device within a reasonable time frame should result in consideration of a more durable form of left ventricular support.**
**IMPELLA® 2.5 CATHETER DIMENSIONS**

![Diagram of Impella® 2.5 Catheter Dimensions]

**IMPELLA CP® CATHETER DIMENSIONS**

![Diagram of Impella CP® Catheter Dimensions]

---

**Figure 9.2 Impella® 2.5 Catheter Dimensions**

**Figure 9.3 Impella CP® Catheter Dimensions**
**IMPELLA® 5.0 CATHETER DIMENSIONS**

![Impella 5.0 Catheter Dimensions Diagram](image)

*Figure 9.4 Impella® 5.0 Catheter Dimensions*

**IMPELLA® LD CATHETER DIMENSIONS**

![Impella LD Catheter Dimensions Diagram](image)

*Figure 9.5 Impella® LD Catheter Dimensions*
CLEANING

- Clean the Automated Impella® Controller keypad and display with either 70% isopropyl alcohol or soap and water. (NOTE: Be aware that soft buttons may be activated when you spray or wipe the display.)
- Clean the Automated Impella® Controller housing with mild detergent.
- Do NOT clean with or expose any part of the clear sidearm of the Impella® Catheter (eg, infusion filter, pressure reservoir) to alcohol. Alcohol has been shown to cause cracks and leaks in these components. Carefully read labels on common skin preps and lotions to avoid using any alcohol-containing products in the area of the infusion filter or pressure reservoir.
- Do NOT allow any fluids to enter the connector sockets.
- Clean the connector cable with 70% isopropyl alcohol.

STORING THE AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER

The Li-Ion batteries must be charged for 5 hours prior to system operation in order to meet the runtime requirement of 1 hour. Failure to do so will yield a shorter runtime. After being unplugged, the Automated Impella® Controller will operate for at least 60 minutes after the batteries have been fully charged.

- Place the Automated Impella® Controller on a horizontal surface to prevent falling.
- Connect the AC power cord to an AC outlet.
- The battery may be destroyed if the Automated Impella® Controller is stored with a depleted battery.

RETURNING AN IMPELLA® CATHETER TO ABIOMED (UNITED STATES)

To return an Impella® Catheter to Abiomed, contact your local Clinical Consultant for an Abiomed-approved return kit.* The kit includes instructions for returning the Impella® Catheter to Abiomed.

* Only available in the United States
APPENDIX A: IMPELLA VENTRICULAR SUPPORT SYSTEMS LIMITED SERVICE WARRANTY (UNITED STATES) ................................................................. A.1

APPENDIX B: ABIOMED-APPROVED GUIDEWIRES AND INTRODUCTORS (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®) ......................................................................... B.1

  Abiomed-Approved Guidewires ........................................................................ B.1
  Alternative Qualified Introducer Sheaths ............................................................... B.1

APPENDIX C: AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER MENU STRUCTURE ... C.1

  Overview ................................................................................................................ C.1
  MUTE ALARM ........................................................................................................ C.1
  FLOW CONTROL ..................................................................................................... C.1
  DISPLAY .................................................................................................................. C.2
  PURGE SYSTEM ..................................................................................................... C.2
  MENU ....................................................................................................................... C.3
APPENDIX A: IMPELLA VENTRICULAR SUPPORT SYSTEMS LIMITED SERVICE WARRANTY (UNITED STATES)

Abiomed®, Inc. warrants that, at the time of installation, all Impella Ventricular Support Systems (the “Goods”) sold will be free from defects in material and workmanship and remain free from defects under normal use and service for a period of one (1) year from the date of shipment. Extended warranty and service may, at Abiomed’s option, be offered for an additional charge, in which event separate or additional terms and conditions may apply. This warranty provides coverage for the Automated Impella® Controller.

This warranty does not cover routine preventative maintenance or replacement parts that are consumed per the controller’s periodic maintenance schedule outlined in the Operator’s and Service Manuals.

The express warranty set forth on this page is the only warranty given by Abiomed with respect to any goods furnished hereunder. Abiomed makes no other warranty, express, implied or arising by custom or trade usage, and specifically makes no warranty of merchantability or of fitness for any particular purpose. Said express warranty shall not be enlarged or otherwise affected by Abiomed’s rendering of technical or other advice or service in connection with the Goods.

Abiomed shall not be liable for incidental or consequential losses, damages or expenses, directly or indirectly arising from the sale, handling or use of the Goods, or from any other cause relating thereto, and Abiomed’s sole responsibility under this warranty will be, at its option, to 1) repair or replace the Goods or any components of the Goods found to be defective in workmanship or material during the foregoing warranty period, or 2) to refund the purchase price paid. All replaced components and Goods will become the property of Abiomed. This warranty shall not apply if the Goods have been: (a) repaired or altered in any way by other than Abiomed or Abiomed authorized service personnel; (b) subjected to physical or electrical abuse or misuse; or (c) operated in a manner inconsistent with Abiomed’s instructions for use of the Goods. If Abiomed determines that a claim was not caused by Abiomed or Abiomed’s authorized service personnel, then Buyer shall pay Abiomed for all related costs incurred by Abiomed. This warranty is not transferable without the express written consent of Abiomed.

Under this warranty, Abiomed will provide at no charge, updates or modifications which directly affect the safe operation of the Goods. Abiomed is not obligated to provide updates or modifications which provide (a) product improvement or enhancement; (b) new product features, or (c) options to the Goods.

Abiomed has no obligation to provide a loaner system during service or maintenance of the Goods. However, at Abiomed’s sole discretion, Abiomed may provide such loaner systems.

This warranty applies to the Automated Impella® Controller and not to any disposable or other component of the Impella® System. Specific items excluded from this warranty include, but are not limited to, pumps, external tubing, and accessories.

This warranty may not be amended without the express written consent of an authorized officer of Abiomed.
APPENDIX B: ABIOMED-APPROVED GUIDEWIRES AND INTRODUCERS (IMPELLA® 2.5 AND IMPELLA CP®)

ABIOMED-APPROVED GUIDEWIRES

Use only Abiomed-tested and supplied guidewires with the Impella® Catheter. Guidewires are specifically designed with unique characteristics to optimize performance of the Impella® System. Guidewires and catheters should always be used in accordance with Abiomed’s instructions.

Table B.1 lists the alternative guidewires that have been tested and approved for use with the Impella® 2.5 System.

Table B.1 Alternative Guidewires for Impella® 2.5 System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Guidewire</th>
<th>Catalog number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Boston Scientific Platinum Plus™ ST 0.018 in</td>
<td>46-605, model ST/0.018/260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boston Scientific V-18 Control Wire™ ST 0.018 in</td>
<td>46-854, model V18/18/300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ALTERNATIVE QUALIFIED INTRODUCER SHEATHS

Abiomed has developed and qualified introducer kits for use with the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters. These kits were specifically designed for use with the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® Catheters and take into account several technical parameters, such as:

- Size of the sheath (internal diameter and length)
- Blood leakage through the hemostatic valve
- Force required to pass the device through the hemostatic valve
- The ability to replace the introducer with a longer-term sheath

Testing and qualification, based on the above criteria, has been completed.

Table B.2 describes alternative introducer sheaths that have been tested and approved for use with the Impella Ventricular Support Systems. Use this information to evaluate the performance of these alternative introducer sheaths relative to each other and to the Abiomed-provided introducer.

Table B.2 Alternative Introducer Sheaths for Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® System

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manufacture</th>
<th>Model</th>
<th>Fr</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Catalog Number</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cook Incorporated</td>
<td>Check-Flo® Introducer (alternative for Impella® 2.5 only)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>13 cm</td>
<td>RCF-14.0-38-J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook Incorporated</td>
<td>Check-Flo Performer® Introducer (non peel-away)</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>30 cm</td>
<td>RCFW-14.0-38-30-J</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Use of the Cook introducer may require higher than expected insertion and removal forces.
APPENDIX C: AUTOMATED IMPELLA® CONTROLLER MENU STRUCTURE

OVERVIEW

The soft buttons on the Automated Impella® Controller provide access to the controller menu structure. The menu structure has 5 main elements:

- MUTE ALARM
- FLOW CONTROL
- DISPLAY
- PURGE SYSTEM
- MENU

This Appendix provides an overview of the Automated Impella® Controller menu structure. Many of the functions accessed through this menu structure are also discussed elsewhere in this manual.

MUTE ALARM

The MUTE ALARM soft button mutes (silences) active alarms. It does not open another menu.

When you press MUTE ALARM, a bell icon with an X through it replaces the words "MUTE ALARM" in the upper right of the display screen. If no alarms are active, no bell icon is displayed. When you press MUTE ALARM it acknowledges all active alarms and silences the audible alarm indicator for 2 minutes (for red or yellow alarms) or 5 minutes (for white alarms). (Refer to section 8 of this manual for more information about Automated Impella® Controller alarms.)

FLOW CONTROL

The FLOW CONTROL soft button opens the FLOW CONTROL menus. Before the Impella® Catheter is started, the menu options include OFF and Start Pump. Once the controller is running, the menu options for the Impella® 2.5 and Impella CP® include BOOST, AUTO, and P-levels between P-0 and P-8. For the Impella® 5.0 and LD, menu options include P-levels between P-0 and P-9 as shown in section 5 in this manual. The procedure for setting P-level is described in "Positioning and Starting the Impella® Catheter" in section 5.
DISPLAY

The DISPLAY soft button opens a menu that includes the following options for viewing waveforms and navigating to other screen displays:

- **Y-axis Scale** – opens a menu from which you can select a waveform and change its appearance by adjusting the scale of the y-axis.
  
  Once the waveform is selected, turn the selector knob clockwise to increase the y-axis scale and counterclockwise to decrease the y-axis scale.

  Select **OK** to accept the new y-axis scale.

  Select **Restore Default** to return to the default y-axis scale.

  Select **Center Signal** to center the waveform.

  Select **Cancel** to exit the tool.

- **Time Scale** – allows you to apply different time scales to the currently displayed waveforms.

- **Center Motor Current** – automatically centers the motor current waveform and adjusts the range accordingly.

- **Infusion** – opens the Infusion History screen. The Infusion History screen, which is discussed in section 4 of this manual, shows the volume and amount of heparin and dextrose delivered. The top entry in the table shows the volume and amount of heparin and dextrose infused from the top of the hour through the current time.

- **Purge** – displays the purge system waveforms and pressure and flow values.

- **Placement** – opens the placement signal / motor current placement screen (described in section 4 under “Placement Screen”).

- **Home** – opens the home screen (described in section 4 under “Home Screen”).

PURGE SYSTEM

The PURGE SYSTEM soft button opens a menu that includes the following purge system procedure options:

- **Change Purge Fluid** – starts the procedure to change the purge fluid

- **Change Purge Cassette** – starts the procedure to replace the purge cassette

- **Change Purge System** – starts the procedure to change both the purge fluid and purge cassette

- **De-air Purge System** – starts the de-air procedure

- **Transfer to Standard Configuration** – starts the procedure for transferring from the set-up configuration of the Impella® 2.5 or Impella CP® System to the standard configuration.

These procedures are described in section 5 of this manual.
The **MENU** soft button opens a menu of options related to controller settings, alarm history, repositioning, and starting a procedure. The menu includes the following options:

- **Settings / Service**
  - **Service**
    - **System Information.** Opens the System Information table. This provides information about the software version, IP addresses, current type of Impella Catheter, and current catheter runtime.
    - **Set Date/Time.** Displays the menu for changing the date and time
    - **Service Timers.** Displays the Service Timers menu. Console operating time and purge motor operating time are displayed in hours.
  - **Screen Brightness.** Opens the Screen Brightness selection box. The brightness of the screen display can be set from 50% to 100%.
  - **Language.** Opens the Language selection box. Use the selector knob to select German, English, French, Italian, Spanish, or Dutch. The system will immediately change the language on the controller for all displayed text. This language will be used after system restart unless another language is selected.

- **Disable (Enable) Placement Monitoring.**
- **Disable (Enable) Retrograde Flow Control.**
- **Disable (Enable) Audio – Placement Signal Not Reliable.** Allows you to enable or disable audio for the Placement Signal Not Reliable alarm. This selection is available only if a Placement Signal Not Reliable alarm is active or the audio has been disabled for this alarm.
- **Disable (Enable) Audio – Purge Pressure High/System Blocked.** Allows you to enable or disable audio for the Purge Pressure High or Purge System Blocked alarms. This selection is only available if one of these two alarms is active or the audio has been disabled for one of these alarms.
- **Disable (Enable) Audio – Placement Signal Lumen Blocked.** Allows you to enable or disable audio for the Placement Signal Lumen Blocked alarm. This selection is available only if a Placement Signal Lumen Blocked alarm is active or the audio has been disabled for this alarm.
- **Disable (Enable) Audio - Suction.** Allows you to enable or disable audio for Suction alarms. This selection is available only if a Suction alarm is active or the audio has been disabled for this alarm.
- **Enable (Disable) Purge Flow Change Notification.** Allows you to enable or disable the purge flow notification white alarms (“Purge Flow Increased” and “Purge Flow Decreased”).
- **Enable (Disable) Surgical Mode.** Allows you to enable or disable Surgical Mode. If Surgical Mode is enabled, the “Impella Stopped” alarm is silenced at P-0.
• **Alarm History** – opens the Alarm History table. This provides a visual display of the chronology of stored alarm messages. The most recently occurring alarm message is displayed at the top of the list. For each message, the date and time it occurred and the alarm message heading is displayed. You can use the selector knob to select individual alarm messages and an explanation for the selected alarm message will be displayed in the failure description box.

• **Start Data Snapshot** – starts the timed data recording function to save real-time operating data for later analysis. Timed Data Recording is described under “Timed Data Recording” in section 7 of this manual.

• **Start Manual Zero** – opens the procedure for manually zeroing the differential pressure sensor of the Impella® 5.0 or LD. (This process is described under "Pressure Sensor Drift and Sensor Failure" in section 6 of this manual.)

• **Case Start** – begins the case procedure. Case Start is described in section 5 of this manual under “Case Start.”
Clinical support 24 hours per day, 7 days a week:

1-800-422-8666 (US)
+49 (0) 1805 2246633 (EU)

www.abiomed.com